

German for the English.



No. I.

FIRST READING BOOK.

EASY POEMS,

WITH

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS,

AND ILLUSTRATED BY

NOTES AND TABLES CHIEFLY ETYMOLOGICAL.

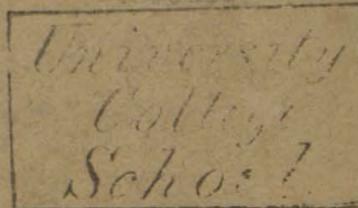
BY

A. SONNENSCHEIN

AND

J. S. STALLYBRASS.

THIRD EDITION.



WILLIAMS AND NORGATE,

14, HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN, LONDON;
AND 20, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET, EDINBURGH.

1875.



~~CAT~~ / 3884

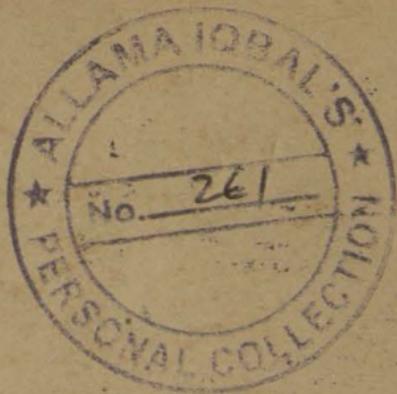
"The practical side of the Science of Language is this, that it can point out ways of arriving at a *practical mastery* of foreign tongues more easily and quickly than by the methods hitherto in vogue. In presence of the growing intercourse between the different nations of the earth, the Science of Language will do well to concern herself with this practical side also, and thus prove a benefactress to those whose vocation compels them to acquire foreign languages."

SCHLEICHER, *Die deutsche Sprache.*

A 30 G
SON 5

261

Errata.



- , 14, l. 7 from bottom; for S read S.
,, " 10 " ; for R read R.
,, 16, end of table c.; insert: schönuren [sneer, snarl] growl.
,, 32, table; after l. 5, insert the line:
 Die Insel isle. | wünschen to wish.
,, 83, table; between schön and treu, insert the line:
 tieſ deep. | Tiefe depth.
,, 126, notes, last line; dele "and 9, a;" insert: and Lichfield
means field of corpses, from the "1000 martyrs"
said to have been murdered there.
7, notes, l. 4; after Münſter, insert Kirche.
,, 167, " 3; add: Conn. with Lat. gallus a cock.
,, 168, " 5; for Strenghtened, read Strengthened.
,, 170, " 6; read, Bug: see ^{fk} M̄ological Tree, and note to "The Pledge."
,, 171, " 2; for wheter, read hether.
,, 180, " 2; read, Inſel: see Cn 14, b; from Lat. insula;
Italian isola, Spanish isla, French île. The
Greek nēs-os and the Celtic ennis, innis, inch
show the root, of which ins-ula is a Diminutive.
-

FIRST READING BOOK.

PART I.

CHANGES OF SOUND.

The five classes of sound.

It is well known that Vowels are only different ways of *opening* the mouth, and letting the voice pass through; while Consonants are different ways of *blocking up* the passage of the voice.

Take these five words, and pronounce them slowly: “are, ere, ill, old, true.” In order to sound A, E, I, O, U, you held your mouth open in five different ways, to let the voice pass freely through. Hence these five sounds are called *Vocal* or *Vowel Sounds* (from the Latin *vox*, and the French *voix*, a voice).

Now take the words “Din, Tin, Thin; Den, Ten, Then.” Here, in sounding the letters—

D—T—Th, *the voice is stopped by the.....TONGUE.*

Next take “Cirencester, Sicily, Shushan, Chichester, Ginger, Judges, Zigzag.” Here the sounds—

C soft, S—Sh—Ch—G soft, Dg, J—Z,
are made by.....HISSING or BUZZING.

Again, take the words “Call, Kill, Quill, Hill, Get, Yet.” Here the sounds—

C hard, K, Q—H—G hard—Y, *come from
the THROAT*
(or somewhere near the throat).

Lastly, take “People, Babel, Forfeit, Vivid, Wayward.” Here we produce the sounds—

P—B—F—V—W, by closing (or nearly closing)
the LIPS.

Hence we call,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| I. D—T—Th | TONGUE-SOUNDS. |
| II. C soft, S—Sh—Ch—G, Dg, J—Z | HISSING-SOUNDS. |
| III. C hard, K, Q—H—G hard—Y | THROAT-SOUNDS. |
| IV. B—P—F—V—W | LIP-SOUNDS. |
| V. M—N | NOSE-SOUNDS. |
| VI. A—E—I—O—U | VOICE-SOUNDS. |

EXERCISE:—Take the following words, and classify all the Consonants (omitting *l*, *r*): “Portuguese, Badajos, Father, Verdict, Water, Practice, Citizen, Grudge, Pigeon, Equip, Guess, Yes, Hush, Kirk, Church, Hiss, Buzz.”

1. Point out all the Tongue-sounds; next, all the Hissing-sounds, etc.

2. What kind of sound is P? ‘A Lip-sound.’

T? ‘A Tongue-sound.’

G hard? ‘A Throat-sound.’

S? ‘A Hissing-sound;’ etc.

The Rule of Change.

Some nations find it hard to pronounce a sound exactly as we do, so they utter another sound that is like it. Now the sounds that are *likest* one another are those made by the same parts of the mouth; thus all the *Lip sounds* are very like one another, and so are all the *Tongue sounds*, &c.—Accordingly, when a Negro tries to say “Never mind, father,” he says “Nebber mind, fader.” For V he uses B, both being *Lip-sounds*; and for Th he uses D, both being *Tongue-sounds*.—An infant, instead of saying “That is Papa,” says “Dat

Baba," namely D for Th, and B for P. In the same way the German for *over* is *ober* or *über*, for *bolster* *Bolster*, and for *then* *denn*.—Again: "When the men of Gilead asked those Ephraimites, which escaped: 'Art thou an Ephraimite?' If he said 'Nay,' then said they unto him 'Say now *Shibboleth*;' and he said '*Sibboleth*', for he could not *frame* to pronounce it right. Then they took him and slew him." Now S and Sh are both *Hissing-sounds*.—In like manner, Letters of the fourth kind, namely *Throat-sounds*, are confounded with each other.—And above all, *Voice-sounds* or *Vowels* are perpetually running into one another.

In the following Table, we have the different forms of the same words in several languages:—

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.					
Greek	Pater	Phrater	Thugater		Diabol-os	Kannab-is.					
Latin	Pater	Frater		Soror	Diabol-us	Cannab-is.					
Russian	Bat-ea	Brat	Dotcher	Sestra	Diavol	Konop-el					
German	Vater	Bruder	Tochter	Schwester	Teufel	Hanf					
Anglo-S.	Fæther	Brother	Dohter	Sweoster	Deofol	Henep					
English	Father	Brother	Daughter	Sister	Devil	Hemp					
Flemish	Vader	Broeder	Dogter	Zuster	Duivel	Hennep					
Swedish	Fader	Broder	Doter	Syster	Diefvul	Hamp.					
The Letters that have changed.	P B V F	t th d d	Ph F B	t th d	Th T D	g gh ch h or dropt	S Sch Z	D T	b v f fv	K C H	b p f
	Lip-sounds.	Tongue-sounds.	Lip-sounds.	Tongue-sounds.	Tongue-sounds.	Throat-sounds.	Hissing-sounds.	Tongue-sounds.	Lip-sounds.	Throat-sounds.	Lip-sounds.

Looking down columns 1 and 2, we find the first letter in "father" and "brother" is always either B,

P, Ph, F or V; and these are all *Lip-sounds*. Again, the middle sound is T, Th, or D; and these are all *Tongue-sounds*. In column 4, the letters that change are S, Sch, Z; which are all *Hissing-sounds*. The middle sound in “daughter,” and the first in “hemp,” are always a G, Gh, K, C, Ch, or H; all of which are *Throat-sounds*. So in column 5, we find the *Vowels ia*, changing into *eu, eo, e, ui* and *ie*. In fact, those letters in the above table, that change with one another, are either all Lip-sounds, or all Tongue-sounds, all Hissing-sounds, all Throat-sounds, or else all Vowels.—As a rule, therefore,—

Sounds of the SAME KIND are the most INTER-CHANGEABLE.

I.—TONGUE-SOUNDS.

German.—D—T, Th.

English.—D—T—Th.

English words in which these Tongue-sounds interchange: *sit, settle, saddle; seethe, sodden; burden, burthen; girded or girt, girdle or girth, etc.*

1.—D, T, Th,* change into Th.

a.—D into Th.

das Bad	the bath.	der Bruder	the brother.
baden	to bathe.	die Bude	the booth.**
beide	both.	da, dar, dort	there.

* Th in German is sounded T; so that from the German Th to the English Th there is a change.

** The Definite Article Der, die, das, will always be given before a noun to show its Gender. To save space, the English the will be omitted after this, but ought not to be omitted in reading thus: “Das Dach the roof.”

das Dach	roof. [thatch]	edel	noble; Anglo-S.
danken	to thank.	æthel	as in Æthelbert, Æthelstan, etc.
dann, denn	then.	der Eid	oath.
das, daß	that.	die Erde	earth.
der Daumen	thumb.	die Feder	feather, pen.
dein	thine, thy.	fördern	to further.
denken	to think.	die Haide	heath.
dicht	thick, dense.	der Heide	heathen.
dicke	thick, stout.	der Herd	hearth.
der Dieb	thief.	die Jugend	[Anglo-S. <i>youth</i>]
dies	this.	das Kleid	[cloth] garment, dress.
das Ding	thing.	kleiden	to clothe.
die Distel	thistle.	das Leder	leather.
doch	though, yet, but.	der Mund	mouth.
der Donner	thunder; <i>and</i> :	nieder	be-neath, ne- ther.
der Donnerstag	thunderer's day, Thor's day, Thurs- day.	die Niederlande	Netherlands, <i>or</i> Low Countries.
das Dorf	thorp, village.	der Nord	north.
der Dorn	thorn.	oder [other, either] or;	"this <i>or</i> that," means "this other-wise that." (<i>Or</i> is from <i>other</i> , as <i>bore</i> from <i>bother</i> .)
drei	three.	der Pfad	path.
dreschen	to thrash.	schaden	to scathe, to hurt.
dringen	to throng, to press.	die Scheide	sheath.
der Drang	throng, pres- sure.	der Schmied	smith.
die Drossel	throstle, thrush.	die Schmiede	smithy.
Du	thou.		
dünn	thin.		
durch	through.		
die Durch- fahrt.	thoroughfare.		
der Durst	thirst.		

sieden	to seethe.	werden	to grow, become;
der Süd	south.		whence:
der Tod	death.	die Würde	worth; and
die Weide	willow, withy, with; <i>as in Samson's</i> “seven withs.”	würdig	worthy.

b.—T, Th,* into Th.

fort	forth, further.	die Mutter	mother.
fünfte	fifth; <i>so also:</i>	-t (Verb-ending) -th, <i>as in:</i>	
sechste	sixth, etc.	“wer reitet? who rideth?”	
die Geburt	[from] gebären to bear]	tausend	thousand.
der Gurt	girth.	treiben	to thrive.
die Latte	lath.	der Vater	father.
der Monat	month.	das Wetter	weather.

2.—T, Th, change into D.

alt	old.	brüten	to brood, hatch.
der Bart	beard.	der Diamant	diamond.
das Bett	bed.	der Draht	thread, wire.
bieten	to bid; whence: verbieten to forbid, etc.	dritte	third.
bitten, beten	[bead, beadsman, Bede, Bedford] to beg, ask, pray.	eitel	idle, vain.
das Blatt	[blade] leaf.	die Eltern	[elders] parents.
das Blut	blood.	die Falte	fold; whence:
die Braut	bride.	die Einfalt	[one-fold] sim- plicity.
breit	broad.	die Fluth	flood.
das Brot	bread.	die Furt	ford.
die Brut	brood.	das Futter	fodder, food.

* T and Th in German are both sounded T.

der Gürtel	girdle.	der Fingerhut	[finger-hat], thimble.
gut	good.	falt	cold.
halten	to hold.	die Karte	card.
hast!	hold! halt!	kneten	to knead.
hart	hard.	laut	loud.
das Haupt [Anglo-S. heafod]	head.	leiten	to lead.
die Haut	hide, skin.	die Leiter	ladder.
-heit	-head, -hood; as in.	die Matte	mead, meadow.
die Gottheit	Godhead.	der Meth	mead, (a drink).
die Kindheit	childhood.	die Mitte,	mittel mid-, middle;
hinter [hinder]	be-hind.		whence:
der Hirt	herdsman; whence:	der Mittag	mid-day.
der Schafshirt	shepherd.	die Mitternacht	midnight;
der Schweinhirt	swineherd.		and:
hundert	hundred.	der Mittwoch [mid-week]	
hüthen	to heed, guard, tend; whence:		Wednesday.
die Huth	heed, care;	der Muth [mood]	mind, heart.
der Hut	hood, hat; and:	nächt	naked.

* Rathen means *to guess* (or, as the Americans say, *calculate*); connected with the Latin *ratio* a reckoning, and the English *rate*. Rathen also means *to advise*. The English *to rede* has both meanings: *to guess*, as in "I can't *rede* the riddle;" and *to advise*, (and the Noun *rede*=advice), as in the following:

"Hear, Land o' Cakes and brither Scots,
"Frae Maidenkirk to John o' Groat's!
"If there's a hole in a' your coats,
"I *rede* ye tent it:
"A chiel's amang you, takin' notes,
"And, faith, he'll prent it."

Also, after a Letter of *Advice*:

"In ploughman's phrase, God send you speed
"Still daily to grow wiser;
"And may ye betterreck the *rede*
"Than ever did th' adviser!"

BURNS.

das Räthsel riddle.	der Thaut dew.
reiten to ride.	theilen to deal or dole out, divide.
das Renntier [run-deer] reindeer.	theuer dear.
retten to rid, deliver.	das Thier [deer] animal.
roth red.	das Thor, die Thür door.
die Ruthe rod.	thun to do; whence: that did; and:
der Sattel saddle.	die That deed.
der Schatten shade, shadow.	tief deep.
die Schulter shoulder.	die Tochter daughter.
schütttern [shudder] to shake.	der Tod death.
schreiten to stride.	todt dead.
der Schritt [stride] step.	tragen [drag, draw, dray] to carry.
die Seite side.	träufen to drench.
selten seldom.	der Traum dream.
die Stadt [stead, as in Wan- stead] town.	traurig [dreary] sad.
die Stätte steady, place.	treiben to drive.
statt, anstatt instead.	der Trieb drift, impulse.
-te, -et (Verb-ending) -d, -ed, as:	Trift drove of cattle; meadow, to which cattle are driven.
liebte loved.	trießen, träufsen,
geliebet beloved, etc.	tröpfeln, träu-
der Tag day.	feln to drip, drop, dribble, drizzle.
tändeln to dandle, trifle.	trinken to drink.
der Tanz dance.	die Trommel drum.
taub deaf.	der Tropfen drop.
die Taube dove.	tüchtig doughty.
tauchen to duck.	unter under.
taufen [to dip] to baptize.	walsten to wield, to rule.
der Teufel devil.	
das Thal dale, dell, vale.	
der Thaler dollar.	

waten	to wade.	die Wuth [wood is Old Engl.
weit	wide, far.	for mad] rage.
der Wermuth	wormwood.	die Zeit tide [as in noon-
die Wittwe	widow.	tide, Whitsuntide], time.
das Wort	word.	

3.—D or T, added

after *l*, *n*, *r*, *s* or *x*, at the end of a word.

While *dog* in Sanscrit is *suan*, in Latin *can*, and in Greek *kun*, all ending in N; the German makes it *Hund*, and the English *hound*, both adding a D to the root. So from the Latin *pagan-us*, and the French *paysan*, we have made *peasant*, adding a T to the word. In like manner, a lagger (one who lags) has become *laggard*; a bragger, *braggart*; so *coward*, *dotard*, *sluggard*, etc. *Amongst* was in Old English “amonges”, *against* was “aganes”, *betwixt* was “betwix” and “betwixen”:

“Ther fell a strife *betwix* his brethren two,
“As all days falleth altercation
“*Betwixen* frends in disputation.”—

CHAUCER.

In fact, after some sounds (especially N), it is so easy to pronounce D or T, and seems to finish the word so neatly, that, to many ears, the word appears incomplete without it. That is why many people say, “*Orphant*, *darlint*, *varmint*, *scholard*; a *muslint gownd*; to *drownd* a dog,” etc.

Some words have the D or T in English, and not in German; others in the German, but not in the English.

WITH T OR D.	WITHOUT T OR D.
der Abend even-tide.	der Morast morass.
a-stound er-staun-en, a-ston-	Niemand no man, nobody.
ish, stun.	der Palast palace.
die Axt axe.	das Pergament } from <i>Perg-</i>
der Dechant [Lat. <i>decan-us</i>]	parchment } <i>gamenā</i> .
dean.	das Pfand pawn, pledge.
doppelt double.	pheasant [Phasian bird]
das Dutzend [Lat. <i>duodecim</i>]	der Fasan.
dozen.	der Rand rim, edge.
einst once, one day.	der Saft sap, juice.
haggard hager.	-schaft (Noun-Suffix) -ship;
Demand [je, aye, ever; &	die Freundschaft friendship.
Mann man] any man,	schinden to skin.
some one.	selbst self, selves.
yond-er jen-er, yon.	thund-er der Donn-er, din.
der Komödiant comedian.	Tyrant [tyrann-os] der Th-
Mailand Milan.	rann.
der Mond moon.	weiland whilome.

WITH T OR D.	WITHOUT T OR D.
der Morast morass.	
Niemand no man, nobody.	
der Palast palace.	
das Pergament } from <i>Perg-</i>	
parchment } <i>gamenā</i> .	
das Pfand pawn, pledge.	
pheasant [Phasian bird]	
der Fasan.	
der Rand rim, edge.	
der Saft sap, juice.	
-schaft (Noun-Suffix) -ship;	
die Freundschaft friendship.	
schinden to skin.	
selbst self, selves.	
thund-er der Donn-er, din.	
Tyrant [tyrann-os] der Th-	
rann.	
weiland whilome.	

We may add some words compounded with the Suffixes, -lich like, and -halben, -wegen, -wissen on behalf, on account, for the sake.

From eigen own,

- kennen to know,	comes eigentlich [own-like] properly.
- Namen name,	- kenntlich that may be known.
- Orden order,	- namentlich by name, specially.
- Wesen being or essence,	- ordentlich orderly, regular.
- dessen of that,	- wesentlich essential.
- deren of them,	- dessenthalben, dessentwegen, bes-
- mein, meiner of me,	- sentwillen on account of that.
etc.	- derenthalben, etc., on their behalf.
	- meinenthalben, etc., for my sake
	etc.

II.—HISsing-SOUNDS.

German.—*ʒ, ʒ̄—S, ʒ̄—Sch.*

English.—Z—C soft, S—Sh—Ch soft, G soft, J.

The Wiltshire boy sings: “I zee’d a vire o’ Zunday night”; the Dutchman calls his Southern Sea “the Zuyder Zee”; and the Ephraimites said Sibboleth for Shibboleth.

ʒ or *ʒ̄* is a double sound, being pronounced *ts*; so that *Schutz* is sounded *shoots*, and *Lenz* *lents*. It is half a Tongue-sound, and half a Hissing-sound.

4.—*ʒ, ʒ̄, S, ʒ̄, change into T.**

a.—ʒ, ʒ̄ into T.

In any part of a word.

beitzen	to bait.	die Münze [Lat. <i>moneta</i>] mint, coin.
der Filz	felt.	das Netz net.
glänzen	to glint, glitter.	die Pflanze plant.
grunzen	to grunt.	die Ratze rat.
heitzen	to heat.	das Salz salt.
das Herz	heart.	schlitzen to slit.
die Hitze	heat.	der Schmerz smart, pain.
die Katze	cat.	die Schnauze snout.
fürz	curt, short.	die Schürze [skirt] apron.
der Lenz	lent-time, spring.	schwarz swart, swarthy, black.
leß-ter	latter.	
das Malz	malt.	schwitzen to sweat.

* When German sounds are said to “change into” English sounds, it is by no means to be understood that the German form of a word is really the *older*, and the English but a *corruption* of it. It is often the reverse, particularly in this very List 4. Many languages change T into a Hissing-sound, but none change a Hissing-sound into T; notice how we pronounce the T in nation, nature. So the English *sit*, *eat* are older than the German *sitz-en*, *ess-en*. (Compare the Swedish *sitt-a*, *ät-a*; the Latin *sed eo*, *ed o*; the Sanscrit *sad-*, *ad-*, &c.)

setzen	to set.	die Zeit	tide, time.
sitzen	to sit.	der Ziegel	[tegulum] tile, brick.
die Spitze [spit]	point, tip, top.	ziehen	to tow, tug, pull; to move, travel.
spritzen	to spirt, to squirt.	das Zinn	tin.
die Stelze	stilt.	der Zoll	toll.
wälzen	to welter, to roll.	der Zopf	[top] tuft.
die Warze	wart.	zu	to.
weżen	to whet.	zucken	to tug, twitch.
der Witz	wit.	die Zunge	tongue.
die Zahl [tale]	number.	zwanzig	twenty.
zahn	tame.	zwei	two.
der Zahn [Greek odont, Latin dent, Danish tand, Gothic tunth]	tooth.	der Zweig	twig, branch.
die Zähre	tear.	zwicken	to twitch, tweak, pinch.
die Zange	tongs.	der Zwilling	twin.
zapfen	to tap.	zwingen	to twinge, pinch, press.
der Zapfer	tapster.	zwitschern	to twitter.
die Zehe	toe.	zwölf	twelve.
zehn	ten.		
das Zeichen	token.		

b.—S, Sz into T.

Never at the beginning of a word.

die Ameise	emmet, ant.
die Apricose	apricot.
aus	out.
außer	outside, without; extra-.
äußer	outer.
äußern	to utter.
äußerst	uttermost.

beissen	to bite; whence:
—der Biß	a bite; Bißchen a little bite, a bit [as morsel from Latin mor- de- to bite]; and:
	{ das Gebiß bit (of a bridle).
besser	better.
das	that (Pron.)

daß	that (Conj.)	messen	to mete or measure.
dreiſig	thirty.	der Mörſer	mortar.
es	it.	die Nessel	nettle.
essen	to eat.	rasseln	to rattle.
das Fäß	vat, vessel.	fäß	sat.
der Fluß [the Fleet,	which formerly ran across Fleet-	schießen	to shoot;
street in London]	river.		whence:
der Fuß	foot.	der Schuß	shot.
die Gasse [gate] street, lane.		schleißen	to slit.
Gate (which, as well as our gait, comes from to go) is Scotch for way, road, street; thus, "Dinna clatter that gate"—"Don't chatter so"; and the famous <i>Canongate, Cowgate, &c.</i> , are streets in Edinburgh.		schließen	to shut; whence:
die Geiß	goat.	das Schloß [slot, sluice]	a lock;
groß	great.		castle.
grüßen	to greet.	schmeißen	to smite.
der Haß	hate, hatred.	der Schweiß	sweat.
hassen	to hate.	der Sessel	settle, stool, chair.
heiß	hot.	der Spieß	[spit] spear.
die Horniß	hornet.	sprießen	to sprout;
der Kessel	kettle.		whence:
läſſen	to let.	die Sproſſe	the sprout; and:
die Linje	lentil.	der Sprößling	[sproutling] descendant, scion.
das Voos	lot.	die Straße	street.
		süß	sweet.
		vergeffen	to forget.
		was?	what?
		das Wasser	water.
		wiffen	to wit, to know;
			ich weiß I wot; (but:
			ich wußte I wist).

5. S and R interchange.

The Hissing-Sound S is apt to be softened into the Liquid R. For example, in the verb To Be, one language will have S where another has R; and even in the same language one part of the verb will have S, and another have R. Compare our *is* and *are*, *was* and *were*; compare *Wes-en* a being, *ge-wes-en* been, with *war* was; compare the Latin *es-se* to be, *es-t* is, with *er-at* was, *er-it* will be; and so on. Latin scholars will remember *arbor*, *arbos*; *quæro*, *quæso*; *gero*, *gessi*, *gestum*, &c. Among English words derived from Latin we have *adhere*, *adhes-ive*; *inquire*, *inquis-itive*; *conquer*, *conques-t*, &c.

In all such cases the S is older than the R. Even when lost in one part of a word, it is apt to re-appear in another. The English for *blasen* is *blare* (to sound, as a trumpet); but the noun is *blas-t*. The German verbs *lieren* or *ver-lieren* to lose, and *frieren* to freeze, have exchanged S for R; but the S re-appears in the nouns *Verlust* loss, & *Frost* frost. Our verb *lose* has two participles, *los-t* and *lor-n*.

a. S into R.

<i>blasen</i>	to blare.	<i>der Hase</i>	hare.
<i>das Eisen</i>	iron.	<i>heiser</i>	hoarse.

b. R into S.

<i>frieren</i>	to freeze.	<i>die Kür</i>	choice;
<i>gefroren</i> [Old Engl. <i>froren</i>]	frozen.	<i>der Kurfürst</i>	Elector.
(<i>fiesen</i> , <i>erfiesen</i> to choose; <i>whence</i>)		<i>lieren</i> , <i>versieren</i> to lose.	
<i>erforen</i>	chosen;	<i>verloren</i> [for-lorn] lost.	
		<i>war</i>	was.

6.—*Sch changes into S.*

This change occurs chiefly before the letters *l*, *m*, *n*, *w*. There are a few examples of its happening in other cases; as, *falsch* false, *Gäsch* yeast, *Harnisch* harness, coat of mail, *s̄chon* [soon] already.

a.—Schl into Sl.

die *Schlaffe* slacks, dross.

der *Schlaf* sleep.

schlaff slack, loose.

schlagen [slay] to strike:

whence:

die *Schlacht* [on-slaught, slaughter] battle; *and*

schlachten to slaughter.

schlau sly.

die *Schlehe* sloe.

schleichen [sleek, slick] to slink, creep.

schleisen to slip, slide;

whence:

die *Schleife* slip-knot, loop, sling.

schleissen [slice] to slit.

die *Schleuse* sluice.

schlicht sleek.

die *Schlange* sling; *whence:* die *Schlange* a snake.

der *Schlitten* sled, sledge.

schlotterig slatternly.

schlüpfen to slip.

schlüpfrig slippery.

der *Schlummer* slumber.

b.—Schm into Sm.

schmal [small] narrow.

schmauchen to smoke.

schmecken to smack, to taste.

schmeicheln [smile] to coax, flatter.

schmelzen to smelt, melt.

der *Schmerz* smart, pain.

der *Schmied* smith.

schmieren to smear.

der *Schmuck* [smug-ness] ornament.

schmuggeln to smuggle.

der *Schmutz* smut, dirt.

schmutzig smutty, dirty.

c.—*Schn* into Sn.

schnarchen, schnarcheln to snore,	schnieien to snow.
snarl.	die Schnepfe snipe.
schnauben, schnauen to snuff,	schnippen, schnappen to snap;
breathe hard.	whence:
die Schnauze snout.	schnippisch snappish.
die Schnecke [snake, sneak]	die Schnuppe snuff (of a
snail.	candle).
der Schnee snow.	

d.—*Schw* into Sw.

die Schwälbe swallow.	schwelgen [to swallow, swill] to feast.
der Schwan swan.	das Schwert sword.
schwarz swart, black.	die Schwester [Anglo-S. sweoster] sister.
der Schwarm swarm.	schwimmen to swim.
Schweden Sweden.	der Schwindler swindler.
der Schweif [sweep] tail.	schwingen to swing.
das Schwein swine.	schwitzen to sweat.
der Schweiß sweat.	schwören to swear.
die Schweiz Switzerland.	schwül sweltery, sultry.
schwellen to swell.	

7.—*Sch* changes into Sc, Sk, Squ, X.

We have now reached the borderland between the Hissing-sounds and the Throat-sounds.

The mere spelling of the German *sch* (now pronounced as a simple Hissing-sound, *sh*) would lead one to guess that formerly it was composed of two sounds; namely, first a Hissing-sound, *S*, and then an Throat-sound, *Ch* or *K*.—Accordingly, we find their *sch* often represented in other tongues by *sk* or *sc*: thus, the word *Fleisch*, *flesh*, is in Flemish *vleesch* (pronounced *flesk*); in Dutch

fleesk; in Danish *flesh*; in Swedish *flask*; in Anglo-Saxon *flæsc*.

In English words, *sh* often changes into *sc* or *sk*, From *shoot* we have *shuttle*, *shuttlecock*, *scuttle* (to shoot coals with) and *skittles*. In the same way we have *shuffle* and *scuffle*; a *ship*, a *skiff*, and a *skipper* or captain; *shatter* and *scatter*; *shriek* and *screak*, or *screech*; *bushy* and *bosky*; *fresh* and *frisky*; *shell* and *scale* (of a fish, or of a balance): also, in Shakspeare, "the cruel *tushes*" of a boar.

X is made up of K und S; as, *lynx* is read like *links*, and *John Knox* like *John knocks*. Hence, X (that is, *ks*) is often put for *sk* or *sc*; for instance, the Latin *misch-* becomes *mix*; and, instead of "he *ask'd* me," many people say, "he *ax'd* me."

die Flasche	flask, bottle.	schäumen	to scum, skim.
frisch [frisk, frisky]	brisk, lively; also: fresh.	schelten	to scold.
die Landschaft	landscape.	scheuern	to scour.
mischen	to mix.	schief	a-skew, awry.
der Schade	scaith, injury.	das Schifflein [little ship]	skiff.
die Schale	scale (of a ba- lance).	der Schiffer	skipper, boat- man.
schallen [squall]	to make a noise.	der Schinderskinne	r, knacker.
der Scharlach	scarlet.	der Schirm	screen; whence:
scharmützeln	to skirmish.	der Regenschirm [rain- screen]	umbrella; and:
die Schärpe	scarf.	der Sonnenschirm [sun- screen]	parasol.
der Schaum	scum, froth; whence:	schleichen	to skulk.
der Meerschaum	sea-scum, sea-foam.	schöpfen	to scoop up, draw water.

Schottland	Scotland.	die Schürze [skirt] apron.
die Schraube	screw.	die Schwadron squadron.
schreiben [Lat. <i>scrib-</i> ,		der Tisch [disc, desk] table.
scribble, scrawl, scribe, scrivener] to write;		(ver-schwinden to vanish); <i>whence:</i>
whence:		ver-schwenden to squander.
be-schreiben to de-scribe;		wischen [whisk] to wipe, sweep.
and:		
die Schrift	scripture.	zwischen [Old Engl. <i>betwixen</i>]
die Schule	school.	betwixt, between.

III.—THROAT-SOUNDS.

German.—H—CH—G—K.

English.—H—Gh, G hard—C hard, K—Y.

The Throat-sounds are remarkably flighty, and very apt to change: —

- (a) Into *Hissing-sounds*;
- (b) Among themselves;
- (c) Into *Lip-sounds*;
- (d) Into *Vowels*; or even to be *Dropt* altogether.

8.—CH, K, G (Throat-sounds), *change into* Ch soft,
G soft, J (Hissing-sounds).

So, in Scotland and the North of England, they say *brig* and *thack*, for *bridge* and *thatch*; from *drag*, we have formed *drudge* and *dredge*; from *dig*, *ditch*; from *stick*, *stitch*; from *sack*, *satchel*; from *hang*, *hinge* and *henchman*; from the Latin *mag-nus*, our *mayor* and *major*, etc. In all these cases, the hard K, G, or Y (Throat-sound), changes into the soft Ch, G, or J (Hissing-sound).

The following table gives a few examples of German pronunciation, as compared with Northern English and with our Southern dialect. It will be seen that the Northern English and the German lean more to the *hard* (Throat-)sounds, and the Southern English and French to the *soft* (Hissing-)sounds.

<i>Hard (Throat) Sounds:</i> C, K, G, Gh, Ch.		<i>Soft (Hissing) Sounds:</i> Tch, Ch, Dg, G, J.
GERMAN.	NORTHERN ENGLISH.*	SOUTHERN ENGLISH.
Birke	birk	birch.
Brücke	brig	bridge.
Bürger	burgher	[geois. burgess; French <i>bour-</i> thatch.]
Dach	thack	Church (of England).
Kirche	Kirk (of Scotland)	ridge.
Rücken	rig	such.
solch	sic	ditch.
Teich a pond	dike (from <i>dig</i>)	which.
welch	whilk	pouch; French <i>poche</i> .
	poke (whence <i>pocket</i>)	
die Banf	bench.	die Buche beech; the bark of which was used for writing; hence Buch book.
die Birke	birch.	der Bürger burgess.
(leich	pale); <i>whence</i> :	das Dach [thatch] roof.
bleichen	to bleach, blench, blanch.	der Dolch dudgeon, dagger.
der Bruch	[from <i>brechen</i> to break] breach, fraction.	dunkel dingy, dim, dark.
die Brücke	bridge.	die Ecke edge, corner.

* If any should think these words Scotch rather than "English," let them remember that when the people of Roxburgh, Berwick and the Lothians were cut off from the Anglian earldom of Northumberland at the Conquest, they did not cease to be Angles, and indeed were more strictly Angles than the people of London. Lowland Scotch is only a dialect of English, and has nothing to do with the Gaelic of the Highlands, which is a Celtic (not Teutonic) tongue.

die Egge	edge, selvage.	der Kerl	churl.
der Engel	angel.	das Kinn	chin.
er-fiesen	to choose; <i>whence:</i>	die Kirche	church.
die Kur	choice, election.	die Kirsche	cherry.
der Fink	finch.	kriechen	to crouch, creep.
flechten	to pleach, plait.	die Krücke	crutch.
flügge [from fliegen to fly]	fledge, fledged.	die Küche [from kochen to cook]	kitchen.
die Gurgel	gorge, throat.	das Küchlein	[chick-ling] chicken.
(hängen	to hang); <i>whence:</i>	die Leiche	[Old Engl. <i>lych</i>] corpse.
die Hänge	hinge; <i>and:</i>	die Lerche	larch.
der Anhänger	[on-hanger, hench-man] adherent.	das Pech	pitch.
die Hecke	hedge.	das Pergament	[from <i>Pergamena</i>] parchment.
hecken	to hatch.	die Pflicht	pledge, obligation.
der Käfer	chafer, beetle.	predigen	to preach.
der Kalk	[chalk] lime.	recken	[rack] to reach, stretch.
der Kamin	chimney.	der Rücken	ridge, back.
die Kammer	chamber.	der Säfet	satchel.
der Kanzler	chancellor.	sengen	to singe.
die Kanzlei	chancery.	solch [Scotch <i>sic</i>]	such.
die Kapelle	chapel.	die Sprache	{ speech.
karg	chary.	der Spruch	
Karl	Charles.	stärken	[to make <i>stark</i> , or stiff]
der Käse	cheese.	(stechen	to starch. <i>whence:</i>
kauen	to chew.	der Stich	stitch.
kaufen	[chaffer, cheapen, Cheapside, Chipping] <i>to buy; whence:</i>	strecken	to stretch.
der Kaufmann	chapman, merchant.	der Teich	[ditch] pool, pond.

tränen	to drench.	zeigen [teach]	to show.
wachen	to watch, or wake.	zucken	to twitch, jerk.
welch [Scotch <i>whilk</i>] which.		zwicken	to twitch.
		zwingen	to twinge.

9.—*Ch* changes into K, Gh; or is Dropt.

See, on p. 18, “(a), (b), (c), (d).”

We now come to examples of Throat-sounds changing among themselves (*b*), or into Lip-sounds (*c*), or disappearing altogether (*d*); all of which things they do very freely.

(*b*) Throat-sounds change *among themselves*.

Thus:—

in the	Latin <i>hort-us</i> , the Greek <i>chort-os</i> , and our <i>garth</i> , <i>gard-en</i> , <i>yard</i>	H, Ch, G, Y are interchanged,
in	<i>vehicle</i> , <i>convey</i> , <i>inveigh</i> , & <i>invective</i>	H, Y, Gh, C ” ”
in	<i>drag</i> , <i>draught</i> , <i>dray</i> , <i>truck</i> , <i>trough</i> , <i>tray</i>	G, Gh, Y, K ” ”
in	<i>slay</i> , <i>slaughter</i> ; <i>work</i> , <i>wrought</i> , <i>wright</i>	Y, Gh, K ” ”

(*c*) Throat-sounds change *into Lip-sounds*.

Another form of the word drag is draw; and W is a Lip-sound.

From drag and draw come *draught* and *trough*, where the *gh* is sounded F; and F is a Lip-sound. The same is true of several other words, as, laugh, cough, enough, rough, tough, all pronounced with F; while the German for them is *lachen*, *feuchten*, *genug*, *rauh*, *zäh*, all with

Throat-sounds. In two or three words we have even changed the spelling to suit the sound, and frankly write *soft*, *sift*, *dwarf* for the German *sachte*, *sichten*, *Zwerg*.

From cough comes hic-cough (pronounced *hiccup*), where the F sound of cough has further changed into P, another Lip-sound.

(d) Throat-sounds often disappear.

Thus, our Suffix *-ly* is formed from *like* by dropping the K; so that *friendly*, *goodly*, mean *friendlike*, *good-like*. So, from *make*, (instead of *make-d*), we have *made* (K dropt); from *Magdalen*, *Maudlin* (G dropt); from *waggon*, *wain*, etc.

Some Throat-sounds vanish, if not out of sight, yet out of hearing. Thus, the old words *burgh*, and *thurgh* (pronounced like *burg*, *thurg*), are still spelt *borough* and *thorough* or *through*; but we no longer hear the Gh in them; they are pronounced *boro'*, *thoro'*, *thro'*.

In Freight and Fright, in Weight and Wight,
In Right and Might, in Night and Light,
GH has left his corpse in Sight;
His soul has long since taken Flight.

However, Gh—even when not pronounced—is a great guide to the derivation of a word; it always points to some Throat-sound in the root: as, *draught* from *drag*; *bedight* from *bedeck*; *wright*, *wrought* from *work*; *be-sought* from *be-seech*, that is, *be-seek*; *drought* from *dry*, which is in German *trock-en*; *Bight* (of Benin, etc.) = *bay*, in German *Bucht*, from *bieg-en* to *bend*.

a.—*ȝ* into K.

auch	eke, also.	der Becher	beaker, goblet.
der Bach	beck, brook.	bleich	[bleak, blank] pale.

brechen	to break.	pochen [poke]	to knock.
das Buch	book.	rächen [wreak]	to avenge.
-chen (Suffix)	-kin; <i>as in</i>	der Rauch	reek, smoke.
Lämmchen	lambkin.	der Rechen	rake.
dicht	thick, dense.	rechnen	to reckon.
die Eiche	oak.	die Sichel	sickle.
Friedrich	Frederick.	sicher	sicker, secure.
der Griech	Greek.	fiech	sick.
horchen	to hark, hearken.	sprechen	to speak.
das Joch	yoke.	stechen [stick]	to sting, prick.
das Knöchel	[from Knochen bone]	der Storch	stork.
der Koch	knuckle.	streichen	to stroke.
der Kuchen	cook.	suchen	to seek.
krachen	cake.	tauchen	to duck, dive.
der Lauch	to crack.	wach	awake.
die Lerche	leek.	wachen [wake]	to be awake.
-lich (Suffix)	-like.	weich [weak]	soft; <i>whence:</i>
machen	to make.	schwach	weak.
die Milch	milk.	die Woche	week.
der Mönch	monk.	das Zeichen	token, sign.

b.—*Eh* into *Gh*, (*rarely F.*); or *Dropt*.

acht	eight.	doch	though, yet.
Allbrecht	[all-bright] Albert.	durch	thorough, through.
brachte	brought.	Euch	you.
(denken	to think);	die Flucht	flight.
<i>whence:</i>		flüchten	to fleet, flee.
<i>ich dachte</i>	I thought;	flüchtig	flighty, fleeting.
<i>der Gedächtnis</i>	thoughtfulness,	die Fracht	freight.
	consideration.	die Frucht	fruit.
dich	thee.	die Furcht	fright, fear.

das Ge-sicht	sight; face.	die Nacht	night.
die Gicht	gout.	nach, nah	nigh.
Heinrich	Henry.	der Nachbar	neighbour.
hoch	high.	die Pflicht	[plight] obligation,
ich	I.		duty.
(icht Old Germ.)	aught,	die Pracht	[bright] splendour;
	something; whence:		whence:
nicht [nought]	not; and	prächtig	[pretty] splendid.
Nichts	nought, nothing.*	recht	right.
feuchten	[cough] to pant.	Ruprecht	Rupert, Robert.
der Knecht	[knight] manser-	sachte	soft (not loud).
	vant.	die Schlacht	[on-slaught,
lachen	to laugh; whence:		slaughter] battle.
das Gelächter	laughter.	schlachten	to slaughter.
leicht	light, easy.	schmeicheln	[smile] to flatter.
-lich (Suffix)	-ly; as:	schnarchen	to snore.
freundlich	friendly.	sichten	to sift.
das Licht	light; whence:	tauchen	to dive, dip.
leuchten	to give light.	die Tochter	daughter.
manch [for manničh]	many.	tüchtig	doughty.
mir	me.	die Wachtel	[from wachen or
(mögen	may); whence:		quacken to quack] a quail.
ich möchte	I might;	wichtig	weighty, impor-
die Macht	might, power;		tant.
mächtig	mighty.		

10.—H, G change into Gh, W, Y, I; or are Dropped.

See, p. 18, "(a), (b), (c), (d)." Here we have examples of the last three.

* Luther says: "Gott hat aus Nichts ein Jäths gemacht, God has out of nought made an aught (something)."

H and G, like the rest of the Throat-sounds, are very changeable. Thus we have the following English words, connected with the Latin *trah* draw, and the German *träg* carry:—

drag	truck	dragg-le	drai-n	drough-t
draw	trough	draw-l	dro-ne	draugh-t
dray	tray	trai-l	trai-n	draf-t

where the Latin H and the German G are represented either by the Throat-sounds K, G; by the Lip-sounds Gh, F, W; by the Vowels Y, I; or are dropt altogether (as in *drone*, *drought*).

a.—*ȝ* into Gh, W.

die Ähl	awl.	mähen	to mow.
blähen	to blow, puff up.	nahe	nigh.
blühen	to blow, bloom.	die Reihe	row, line.
gähnen	to yawn.	roh, rauh	raw, rough.
höhe	high.	sah	saw; from
hohl	hollow.	sehen	to see.
fahl	callow, bald.	das Stroh	straw.
die Krähe	crow.	zäh	tough.
die Kuh	cow.	ziehen	to tow, tug.

b.—*ȝ* into Gh, W, Y, I; or Dropt.*

das Auge	eye; whence:	be-gehn	to yearn or long
(Windauge)	wind-ow, an		for.
eye or hole for ventilation.		bergen [bury]	to hide;

whence:

* In one or two words, however, we retain a G which the Germans have softened into Y or I; thus *egg* is Gi; but we have softened *eggery* into eyry (eagle's nest).

burrow, barrow, (ancient tomb); <i>and</i> :	der Hagel	hail.
die Burg castle, burgh, borough, -bury.	heilig	holy, hallow.
biegen, beugen, to bow, bend; <i>whence</i> :	der Honig	honey.
der Bogen bow, arch.	der Hügel	hill.
der Bug bow (of a ship).	-ig (Suffix)	-y; <i>as in</i> :
borgen to borrow.	rosig	rosy.
der Degen [thane] sword; <i>also</i> , swordsman, warrior.	die Jugend	[Anglo-S. <i>yugoth</i>] youth.
eigen own.	farg	charry.
die Fliege fly.	legen	to lay.
fliegen to fly.	liegen	to lie; <i>whence</i> :
der Flegel flail [<i>from flog</i>].	er lag	he lay;
folgen to follow.	das Lager	layer, lair, camp.
gähnen to yawn.	lügen	to lie, tell a lie.
der Galgen gallows.	die Magd, Maid	maid.
gar [yare] quite.	der Magen	maw, stomach.
die Garbe [yarrow] sheaf.	mögen	may.
das Garn yarn.	der Morgen	morrow, morning (Old Engl. <i>morwening</i>).
gäten to weed.	der Nagel	nail.
ge- (sign of Past Participle) y-; as in <i>y-clept</i> from <i>clepe</i> to call; <i>y-clad</i> &c.	nagen	to gnaw.
gegen gain- (<i>as in gain-sayer</i>); a-gain-st.	Norwegen	[north-ways] Norway; (<i>hence Norwegian</i> .)
gelb yellow.	der Pfennig	penny.
gellen to yell, ring loud and shrill.	die Regel	rule.
genug enough.	der Regen	rain.
gestern yester-day.	regnen	to rain.
	der Roggen	rye.
	die Säge	saw (a tool).
	sagen	to say; <i>whence</i> :
	die Sage	saying, saw, <i>as in</i> "wise saws".
	schlägen [slay]	to beat.

schlug [slew] struck.	der Wagen waggon, wain.
schwelgen to swallow, swill, revel.	der Weg way.
das Segel sail.	weg away.
das Siegel [Lat. <i>sigillum</i>] seal.	wiegen to wag, swag or sway (to and fro), rock; <i>whence:</i>
die Sorge [sorrow] care.	wägen to weigh; <i>and:</i>
der Stegreif [sty-rope] stirrup.	die Wiege cradle.
der Tag day.	würgen [worry] to strangle,
der Talg tallow.	butcher, massacre.
der Teig dough.	der Ziegel [Lat. <i>tegulum</i>] tile.
tragen [draw, dray, drain, tray, trail, train] to carry.	ziehen (<i>whence zog</i>) tug, tow.
der Trog trough.	-zig * (Suffix) -ty [<i>contr.</i> <i>from zehen, zehn ten</i>]; <i>as:</i>
der Vogel fowl, bird.	zwanzig [twain-ten] twenty.

IV.—LIP-SOUNDS.

German.—ß—þ—v—f, v—w.

English.—P—B—F—V—W.

Even in English there are many words in which the five Lip-sounds interchange. For example, it does

*In the word *Ten* and the words from which it is derived, we see a rich example of Changes:

	Point, show, make known	Pointer: fin- ger or toe	Pointers: their number, Ten	Letters changed.
Greek	deik-, dak-	dak-tyl-	dek-a.	d-k.
Latin	dic-, doc-	dig-it-	dec-em.	d-c, d-g.
Germ.	{zeig-en Zeich-en}	Zeh-e	{zeh-en, zig}	z-g, z-ch, z-h.
Engl.	{teach tok-en}	to-e	{stee-n, te-n, ty.}	t-ch, t-k, t—.

not sound well to our ears to say, “A cat has nine lives;” so we say *lives*, changing F into V. So also: *five, fifth, fifteen, fifty*, etc. Again, from the Latin *scrib-* to write, we have *scripture, scrivener, scribble, scrawl*, in which P, V, B, and W do service by turns; and in German *scripture* is *Schrift*, so that we may add F to the list.—So also, *scrape, scrub, scurf, scurvy, scour*, or (as it was spelt formerly) *scowr*, where the consonant near R is either P, B, F, V or W.

Scour and *Scowr*.—The Romans had only one letter for U and V; which at first they wrote pointed, like V, and afterwards rounded, like U. Hence the confusion of U and V in our old books; e. g.: “Speak vnto thy seruant.”

Obs.—The English W is made by pushing the Lips forward, and making them nearly touch; if they did touch, the sound would be B; hence, our *screw*, where the lips *nearly* meet, becomes in German *Schraube*, where they actually *do* meet.

11.—F changes into V.

eifſ, elf	eleven.	der Hafſt	haven.
das Faſſ [vat]	vessel, cask.	der Hafer	haver, oats.
fünf	five	liefern	de-liver.
der Graf [Anglo-S. ge-refa]	reeve (as in shire-reeve, sherriff), count; whence:	der Ofen	oven.
Markgraf	margrave, &c.	die Schaufel	shovel.
		der Teufel	devil.
		zwölf	twelve.

12.—F, Pf change into P.

der Affe	ape.	der Bischof	bishop.
der Apfel	apple.	der Dampf [damp]	steam;
auf	up.	hence:	

das Dampfschiff	steamship.	das Pflaster	plaster.
dämpfen	to damp.	die Pflaume	plum.
gaffen	to gape.	die Pflicht	[plight, pledge]
greifen	to gripe.		duty, obligation.
der Hanf	hemp.	der Pflock	plug, peg.
die Harfe	harp.	pflücken	to pluck.
der Haufen	heap.	der Pflug	plough.
helfen	to help.	die Pforte	[Lat. <i>porta</i>] portal,
hoffen	to hope.		gate.
hüpfen	to hop.	der Pfosten	post.
impfen	to imp, graft.	die Pfote	paw.
der Krampf	cramp.	das Pfund	pound.
das Kupfer	copper.	reif	ripe.
Laufen	[leap, Scotch <i>loup</i> , e-lope, inter-loper] to run.	der Saft	sap, juice.
offen	open.	das Schaf	sheep.
der Pfad	path.	schaffen	to shape, create, work.
der Pfahl	pale, pole, pile.	schärf	sharp.
pfählen	to impale.	das Schiff	ship.
die Pfalz	[Lat. <i>palatinum</i> , palace] Palatinate.	der Schiffer	shipper, skipper.
das Pfand	pawn, pledge.	der Schlaf	sleep.
die Pfanne	pan.	schlüpfen	to slip.
die Pfarrer	parish, living.	die Schnepfe	snipe.
der Pfau	[Lat. <i>pavo</i>] pea-cock.	der Schweif	[sweep] tail.
der Pfeffer	pepper.	die Seife	soap.
die Pfeife	pipe.	stampfen	to stamp.
der Pfeiler	pillar.	der Stiefvater	stepfather.
der Pfennig	penny.	stopfen	to stop up, to stuff.
die Pfersich, or	{ Persian fruit,	der Stöpsel	stopple, stopper.
die Pfirsche	{ peach.	der Streif	stripe, strip, streak.
die Pflanze	plant.	die Stufe	step.

der Stumpf	stump.	tröpfeln	to drip, trickle, dribble.
der Sumpf	swamp.	die Waffe, Waffen	weapon.
taufen [dip]	baptize.	werfen [warp]	to throw, cast.
tief	deep.	zapfen	to tap.
triefen	to drip.	der Zapfer	tapster.
der Tropfen	drop; whence:		

13.—B changes into F, V, or W.

ab	off.	grob	gruff, coarse, rude.
der Abend	even-tide, even- ing.	haben	to have; whence:
berauben	to bereave.	die Habe	property.
der Biber	beaver.	halb	half.
der Dieb	thief.	heben	to heave, lift.
eben	even, level.	der Herbst	[harvest] autumn.
er=lauben	to give leave, allow.	das Kalb	calf.
falb	fallow, a pale yellow.	kleben	to cleave, stick.
das Fieber	fever.	der Knabe	[knave] boy.
die Garbe	[yarrow] sheaf.	das Laub	leaf, foliage.
geben	to give.	leben	to live; whence: das Leben
gelb	yellow.	die Leber	liver.
graben	[Greek <i>grapho</i> , I en-grave, I write]	der Leib	loaf.
	to grub, dig;	der Leib	[life] body; whence: die Leibgarde
	whence:		life-guard.
das Grab	the grave;	die Liebe	love.
die Grube	[groove] pit, hollow.	lieb	dear: "I would as <i>lief</i> do this"; whence:
		lieber	rather.*

* "I hadde liever than a barrel of ale,

"My wife at home had heard this gentil tale."

ob, oben, ober ab-ove, [Old Engl. <i>ab-oven</i>], over; <i>whence</i> :	der Sperling (for Sperb-ling) sparrow.
das Obdach [overthatch] covert, shelter; <i>and</i> :	der Stab staff.
die Obsicht oversight, supervision.	sterben [starve] to die.
der Rabe raven.	streben to strive;
die Salbe salve.	<i>whence</i> :
schaben to shave.	das Streben striving, effort.
schnauben to snuff, snort.	taub deaf.
die Schwalbe swallow.	die Taube dove.
selb self.	treiben to drive.
das Sieb sieve.	übel evil.
sieben seven.	über over.
das Silber silver.	weben to weave;
	<i>whence</i> :
	das Weib wife; (as we have <i>spin-ster</i> for maid).

V.—NOSE-SOUNDS OR NASALS (M, N).

14.—a.—*-en changes into -om.*

der Besen besom, broom.	Meerbusen [sea-bosom]
der Boden bottom, floor.	gulf.
der Busen bosom; <i>whence</i> :	der Fäden fathom, line, thread. selten seldom.

b.—N dropt.

N before another consonant is apt to fall out in English, especially after the vowels *o, oo, ou, u*. From young comes you-th; from stand, stoo-d; from ten, ti-the; from ken, un-cou-th (unknown, therefore strange); from can, cou-l'd (or, as we rightly pronounce it, cood). The

L in could is merely a modern blunder; in Old Engl. the word was *coude, cuthe*.

ander	other.	sanft	soft.
fünf	five.	stand, stund	stood.
die Gans	goose.*	uns	us.
die Jugend	youth.	der Zahn	tooth.*
kounte	could.	die Zehnte	[tenth] tithe.
der Mund	mouth.		

VI.—VOICE-SOUNDS OR VOWELS.

Two words are enough to show how the Vowels interchange: Sing, Sang, Sung, Song; Get, Gat, Gotten. Here, within the compass of two little words, we have changes rung on the five Vowels, A, E, I, O, U.

It is natural that the Vowels (which are only “different ways of holding the mouth open to let the Voice pass through”) should slide easily into one another. It has been remarked (*Penny Cyclopædia*, article “Alphabet”) that the Mewing of a Cat is nothing but a gradual passing from Vowel to Vowel in what is called their natural order, namely the following:

1. I in *machine*, (EE in *eel*).
2. E in the French *père*, (AI in the English *air, pair*).
3. A in *ah, papa*.
4. O in *oh, more*.
5. U in *true* (OO in *root*).

Let any one slowly pronounce the following: ee—ay—ah—oh—oo, or only the first, middle, and last,

* *Zahn* looks very unlike *tooth*; but it once had a D at the end. Compare the Swedish *tand*, Gothic *tunth*, Latin *dent*, Sanscrit *danta*, &c. — Though *Gans* is goose, *Gänserich* is gander.

16415 | 3884

ee—ah—oo; he cannot fail to mimic the language above-mentioned. The German for “mew” is *miu*, pronounced *mee-ah-oo*.

Double Vowels (Diphthongs), such as *au*, *ei*, etc., are combinations of two Vowels to form a mixed sound. Thus the German *Au* is a combination of Nos. 3 and 5 pronounced quickly; and sounding like *ou* in *mouth*; so that the German *Haus*, *Maus*, and the English *house*, *mouse* are pronounced alike. *Ei* is a similiar combination of Nos. 3 and 1; so that *mein*, *fein*, are sounded like our *mine*, *fine*.

We give here a few of the commonest and most striking Changes of Vowels from German to English.

[*N.B.*.—The most remarkable are: No. 16, where the *broad* sounds *A*, *Au*, *O* change into the *narrow* sound *E*; and Nos. 17 and 18, where the *narrow* sound *E* changes into the *broad* sounds *A*, *O*.]

15.—A changes into O.

ab [Scotch <i>aaff</i>] off.	falt	cold.
alt [Scotch <i>auld</i>] old.	der Kamm	comb.
an	laden	to load.
bald [bold] quick, soon.	lang	long.
das Band bond.	die Nase	nose.
brach broke.	die Pappel	poplar.
brachte brought.	der Pfahl	pole.
dachte thought.	sanft	soft.
der Drang throng.	sprach	spoke.
die Falte fold.	der Thaler	dollar.
Gesang song.	der Wald	wold, wood.
halten to hold.	die Zange	tongs.

16.—*A, Au, O change into E, Ea, Ee.**a.—A into E, Ea, Ee.*

der Al	eel.	der Rath	rede, advice.
der Abend	even, evening.	die Rast	rest.
der Bart	beard.	die Saat	seed.
da, dar	there:	das Schaf	sheep.
dann	then.	der Schlaf	sleep.
der Fasan	pheasant.	schwach	weak.
der Gast	guest.	die Sprache	speech.
der Hanf	hemp.	der Stahl	steel.
ja	yea, yes.	der Stammt	stem.
das Jahr	year.	die Stadt	[stead] town.
klar	clear.	statt, anstatt	in-stead.
lassen	to let.	die Straße	street.
mager	meagre, lean.	die That	deed.
das Mahl	meal, repast.	die Waffe	weapon.
die Matte	mead, meadow.	wann?	when?
der Nacken	neck.	zwanzig	twenty.

b.—Au into E, Ea, Ee.

ausch	eke, also.	der Lauch	leek.
das Auge [Anglo-S. <i>eage</i>] eye.		laufen [leap]	to run.
der Baum [beam] tree.		der Pfau	pea-cock.
berauben	to bereave.	der Rauch	reek, smoke.
der Haufen	heap.	der Saum [seam]	hem.
erlauben	to give leave.	taub	deaf.
das Haupt	head.	taufen	to s-teep, dip; hence to baptize.
kaufen [cheapen] to buy.		traurig [dreary]	sad.
das Laub	leaf, foliage.		

c.—O into E, Ea, Ee.

die Böhne	bean.	brodlos	breadless.
das Brod	bread.	der Floh	flea.

groß	great.	Ostern	Easter.
hören	to hear; whence:	roth	red.
horchen	to hearken.	der Strom	stream.
das Loch [leak]	hole.	schwören	to swear.
das Loth [lead]	plummet; ounce.	der Tod	death.
die Noth	need, distress.	todt	dead.
oder [either]	or.	wo?	where?
das Ohr	ear.	die Woche	week.
der Ost	east.	die Wolke [welkin]	cloud.
		zwölf	twelve.

17.—E changes into A.

der Engel	angel.	letzter	latter.
die Erle	alder, a tree like the willow, which grows by rivers; whence:	merken	to mark.
der Erlenkönig, Erlkönig	King of the Alders.	die Messe [Lat. <i>Missa</i> , dis- mission]	the Mass.
die Esche	ash-tree.	das Pergament	parchment.
der Esel [Lat. <i>asell-us</i>]	ass.	quetschen	to quash, squash.
die Espe	asp, aspen-tree.	der Schmerz [smart]	pain.
fern	far.	der Stempel	stamp.
fest	fast, firm.	sterben*	[starve] to die.
fett	fat.	der Stern*	star.
das Heft	haft, handle.	der Theer*	tar.
das Herz	heart.	werfen	[warp] to throw, cast.
die Lerche	larch.	die Wespe	wasp.
die Lerche	lark.	zwerch	a-thwart.
letzt	last.	der Zwerg	dwarf.

* Theer, tar; Stern, star; fern, far &c. The tendency to change *er* into *ar* may still be seen in the way we pronounce *clerk*, *serjeant*, *Derby*; namely as *clark*, *sarjeant*, *Darby*; also in “larned, varmin, sarvant, astarn, etc.”

18.—*E, ee, eh, ä, ei, ie change into O, oa, oe, oo, ou.*

Here the Scotch dialect is like the German in preferring *narrow* sounds.

Take the first words in List (*a*): blow is in Scotch *blae*, board *bredd*, go *gae*, crow *crae*. Also the first words in List (*b*): both is *baith*, bone *bane*, broad *braid*, oak *aik*, oath *aith*, own *ain*, one *ane*, [whence our Article *an*, *a*].

a.—E, ee, eh, ä into O, oa, oe, ou.

blähen	to blow, puff.	ſäen	to sow.
das Brett	board.	ſchelten	to scold.
gehen	to go.	die Schlehe	sloe.
jener	yon, yonder.	der Schnee	snow.
frähen	to crow.	ſchwer	sore, heavy.
der Lehni	loam.	das Schwert	sword.
das Lehn, Lehnen [loan]	feoff, fee.	die Seele	soul.*
die Lehre	lore, learning.	ſehr [sore]	very.
mähen	to mow.	das Weh	woe.
mehr	more.	die Welt	world.
das Reh	roe.	wer?	who?
die Rhede	roads, roadstead (where ships ride at anchor); wharf.	das Werf	work.
		werth	worth.
		zäh	tough.
		die Zehe	toe.

b.—Ei into O, oa.

beide	both.	breit	broad.
das Bein	bone.	die Eiche	oak.

* “Not on thy *sole*, but on thy *soul*, harsh Jew,
“Thou makest thy knife keen.”

Merchant of Venice, iv. 1.
In German the one would be *Sohle*, the other *Seele*.

der Eid	oath.	leiten	to lead).
eigen	own.	meist	most.
ein	one; whence:	nein	no.
allein [all-one]	alone.	die Reihe	a row.
der Geist	ghost, spirit.	der Reif	rope, hoop, ring.
die Geiß	goat.	die Seife	soap.
heil	whole.	die Speiche	spoke (of a wheel.)
das Heil	wholeness, health, salvation.	der Stein	stone.
heilig	holy.	streichen	to stroke.
heilsam	wholesome.	der Teig	dough.
heim	home.	theilen	to dole out.
heiß	hot.	der Treiber	drover.
das Kleid [cloth]	garment.	(wissen	to wit); whence:
kleiden	to clothe.	ich weiß	I wot.
der Laib	loaf.	zwei	two.
der Leitstern	loadstar; (from	das Zeichen	token.

c.—ie into O, oo, ou.

biegen	to bow, bend.	schießen	to shoot.
fließen	to flow.	sprießen	sprout.
die Liebe	love.	trieb	drove.
lieben	to love.	verlieren	to lose.
schieben	to shove.	vier	four.
schien	shone.	ziehen	to tow.

19.—Ö changes into U.

der Dolch	dudgeon, dagger.	groß	gruff, coarse.
der Donner	thunder.	der Höcker	hunch.
doppelt	double.	der Horst	hurst, (copse).
die Drossel	thrush.	der Knöchel	knuckle.
fördern	to further.	der Mord	murder.
		der Most	must, (young wine.)

die Nonne	nun.	die Stoppel	stubble.
der Pflock	plug, peg.	stottern	to stutter.
der Rost	rust.	die Tonne	tun.
solch [from so-lich, so-like]	such.	der Torf	turf.
der Sommer	summer.	die Trommel	drum.
sondern	to sunder.	die Trompete	trumpet.
die Sonne	sun.	der Trost	[trust] comfort.
der Sporn	spur.	vorder	further, more forward.
der Stoff	stuff.	der Zopf	tuft.

20.—ü, ü change into O.

blühen	to blow, bloom.	nun	now.
das Blut	blood.	der Pfuscher	botcher,bungler.
der Bruder	brother.	prüfen	to prove.
die Büchse	box.	die Ruthé	rod.
die Burg	borough.	der Schuß	a shot (from a bow or gun).
durch	thorough.	der Schütze	a shot, marks- man; (<i>whence</i> Scharf- schütze sharp-shooter).
das Dutzend	dozen.	schwur	swore.
die Fluth	flood.	der Sturm	storm.
der Fuchs	fox.	thun	to do.
für	for.	die Thür	door.
die Furt	ford.	über	over.
das Futter	fodder.	das Wunder	wonder.
glühen	to glow; <i>whence</i> :	die Würde	worth; <i>whence</i> :
die Gluth	a glow.	würdig	worthy.
die Gurgel	gorge, throat.	der Wurm	worm.
hüpfen	to hop.	die Zunge	tongue.
das Kupfer	copper.		
die Kutsche	coach.		
die Mutter	mother.		

PART II.

WORD-BUILDING.

A new word can be made from an old one by the addition of a Prefix or a Suffix.

I. PREFIXES.

A PREFIX is a word or syllable put *before* a word, thus making a new word with some difference of meaning; as: *un-able*, *en-able*, *dis-able*; *a-live*, *en-liven*, *out-live*; where the words or syllables *un*, *en*, *dis*, *a*, *out*, are all Prefixes.

Prefixes are used chiefly in making Verbs, Nouns and Adjectives. The Verb-Prefixes are the most important.

VERB-PREFIXES.

A Verb-Prefix is a word or syllable, which, placed before any word, makes a *Compound Verb* of it.

(a). Compare the following words, all from the Latin verb *pōn* or *pōs*—to place: Position, Compose, Depose, Dispose, Expose, Impose, Interpose, Juxtaposition, Oppose, Preposition, Propose, Postpone, Repose, Suppose, Transpose. A Latin scholar can trace the different meanings of these words to the Latin Prefixes *con*, *de*, *dis*, *ex*, etc. But in the following words:

Overdone, Underdone, Outdone, Undone, which are purely English, any one can see how the Prefixes *over*, *under*, *out*, *un*, alter the meaning of the word *done*. The same in "I *came*, I *saw*, I *overcame*"; also in the following: A-base, Be-sprinkle, Counter-act, Dis-courage, En-courage, For-bid, Fore-tell, Gain-say, In-lay, Ill-treat, Mal-treat, Mis-manage, Out-strip, Over-take, Pre-pay, Re-pay, Sub-join, Un-lock, Under-mine, Up-hold, With-hold.

(b). Verb-Prefixes are divided into Separable and Inseparable. For example, to *illtreat* a boy, is the same as to *maltreat* him; but, though you can say, "They *treated* the child *ill*," you cannot say, "They *treated* the child *mal*." *Ill* is therefore a Separable, *mal* an Inseparable Prefix.

(c). Some Verb-Prefixes are in one of their meanings Separable, in another Inseparable. Thus, to *lift* a man *up* is the same as to *uplift* him; but to *set* him *up* is not the same as to *upset* him. Up in *uplift* is Separable; up in *upset* is Inseparable.—In the following Lists, the four words *Durch*, *Über*, *Um*, and *Unter*, will be found both among Separable and Inseparable Prefixes.

(d). Most of the Inseparable Prefixes are *not* words by themselves, so that they could not stand in a sentence apart from the Verb (just as *mal*, not being an English word, did not make sense by itself). The Separable Prefixes *are* words of themselves, some of them Prepositions, and some Adverbs (like *ill* in *illtreat*).

N.B.—The Prefix of a German Verb is often represented in English,

- (1) by a *separate word*; as, *er-lassen*, to let off;
- (2) by a *Suffix* (syllable placed *after* the word); as:—

From	Are formed	
	by Prefixes	by Suffixes
Seele soul, Lat. <i>anima</i>	be=seelen	to anim-ate.
Frucht fruit	be=fruchten	to fructi-fy, fertil-ize.
groß great, Lat. <i>magnus</i>	ver-größern	to magni-fy.
süß sweet	ver=süßen	to sweet-en.

So that in English the tail of a word often does what the head does in German.

INSEPARABLE VERB-PREFIXES.

1.—Be-.

Be- signifies, to *furnish with* (something), to *give* or *apply* (something) to. Thus, *beflügeln* is, to *furnish with wings* (Flügel); *sich bemühen* to *give oneself trouble* (Mühe); from *zahlen* to *pay* (money), we have *bezahlen* to *pay* (a person), that is, to *give payment to*.

So, in English, to *Bedew* is to *cover with* dew; to *Bewitch* a man, is to *apply* witchery to him; to *Bewail*, *Beweep* or *Bemoan* one's fate or friends, is to wail, weep, or moan *for* them, that is, to *apply* the action of wailing, etc., to them.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS:—the Prefix *be-*; the Suffixes *-fy*, *-ize*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
decken [deck] to cover	bedecken bedeck, cover over.
denken to think	bedenken bethink, think upon, consider.
drohen, dräuen to utter threats	bedrohen, bedräuen threaten (some one).
Flügel [from fliegen to fly] a wing	beflügeln furnish with wings, to wing.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
frei	befreien to free, to set free.
Frucht	befruchten fructify, fertilize.
gehren	begehren long for, crave; <i>whence Begier desire, craving.</i>
Geleit [leiten to lead] an escort	beginnen begin.
Glück [for Ge-lücf] luck, prosperity	begleiten to escort, accompany.
grüßen to greet	beglücken give prosperity to, bless, favour.
herrschen [from Herr] to lord it, to be master	begrußen give greeting to, greet.
Herz heart	beherrschen lord it over, be master of, govern. {(beherzen hearten, inspirit); and beherzigen lay to heart.
fennen [ken] to know	bekennen own or admit as known, acknowledge.
Kleid [cloth] garment, dress	bekleiden put clothes upon, clothe.
Kranz garland, wreath	bekränzen put a garland upon, wreathe, enwreathe.
laden to lade	beladen to load, burden.
reuen [rue] to repent, be sorry	bereuen repent of, be sorry for, rue.
röhren to move	beröhren apply motion to, touch.
schauen to look	beschauen look at, contem- plate.
schreiben [Lat. scrib-] to write	beschreiben describe.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
Schutz [shed] shelter	beschützen protect, shelter.
stürzen to rush down, fall	bestürzen give a shock to, stun, shock, dismay.
treten [tread] to step	betreten tread upon, trample.
wahr [Lat. <i>ver-us</i>] true, sure	bewähren verify; and bewahren keep safe.
Waffe weapon	bewaffnen to arm.
zahlen to pay (money)	bezahlen pay for (a thing); pay (a person.)
zwingen to press, force	bezwingen master by force, subdue.

2.—Durch: (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes, (b) and (c)," page 40.

As to *upset* (Insep.) is not the same as to *set up* (Sep.), so *ich durchgehe* is not the same as *ich gehe durch*: thus "die Pferde durchgehen (Insep.) den Wald" = the horses *walk-through* the wood"; but "die Pferde gehen mit ihm durch (Sep.)" = the horses *walk off* with him," that is, they *run away* with him.

N.B.—In general, when the four Prefixes Durch, Ueber, Um, Unter are Inseparable, the verb (even though Intransitive before) becomes a *Transitive* verb: as, *ich durchging* (or *umging*) die Stadt = I walked-through (or walked-round) the town. When they are Separable, if the verb was *Intransitive* before, it generally remains so: as, *ich ging durch* (or *ging um*) = I walked off (or walked about).

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*through, across, over.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
d̄ingen [throng] to press, push	durchd̄ingen push through (anything), pierce, penetrate.
gehen to go	durchgehen pass through (something).
laufen to run	durchlaufen run all over (so- mething), overrun, over- spread.

3.—Ent-.

a.—*Removal, Deprivation.*

Haupt = head, enthaupfen = to remove the head from, to deprive of the head; or, as we very curiously say, behead. Schuld = guilt, blame; entschuldigen to remove blame from, to free from guilt, justify or excuse.

Ent- often stands in contrast with Be- and Er-: thus, bekleiden = to clothe, entkleiden = to unclothe; er-mannet Euch zum Kampfe = man yourselves to the combat, er ist ganz entmannet = he is quite unmanned.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—un-, dis-, de-, ex-; off.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
decken [deck, Lat. teg, tec] to cover	entdecken dis-cover, un-cover, de-tect.
Ehre honour	enteschren to dishonour, de- grade.
fahren to travel	entfahren { slip out of, drop from, escape
fallen to fall, drop	entfallen { (one's lips, etc.)
falten to fold	entfalten unfold.
Kraft strength	entkräftten disable.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
Mann	man (Lat. <i>vir</i>)
Mensch	man (Lat. <i>homo</i>)
reißen	to pluck, tear
rennen	to run
Schuld	guilt
setzen	to set, place
Waffe	weapon
weichen	to give way
wickeln	to fold, wrap
wohnen	to dwell
	entmännern unman. entmenschen inhumanize. entreißen pluck, wrench or wrest out (of one's grasp.) entrinnen run away, get off. entschuldigen exculpate, ex- cuse. entsetzen displace; sich entsetzen shrink back, be horrified. entwaffnen disarm. entweichen retire, make one's escape. entwickeln unfold, develop. entwöhnen wean (from a habit); see "ge-wöhnen," page 49.

b. — { *Passing into a new condition.*
 { *Beginning (to be or do.)*

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*up*, etc.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
brennen	to burn
flammen	to flame, flare, blaze
springen	to spring
stehen	to stand
	entbrennen burn up, catch fire. entflammen flare up, blaze up. entspringen { spring up, take entstehen { its rise, origi- nate.

4.—Er-.

In the Prefix Er-, there is always a notion of *completeness*, of *arriving at your object*, of *getting something done*. Thus, *schlagen* is to beat, *erschlagen* to beat thoroughly, *to slay*. *Spähen* [spy] to be on the look out; *erspähen* to spy out, espy.

a.—*Doing a thing* { *out and out, thoroughly;*
till you gain your end;
to death.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—the Prefixes *en-*, *a-*, *de-*, *ex-* (or *e-*), *re-*; the Suffix *-en*; *out*, *off*, *up*, *down*, etc.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
barm weich } blicken	tender, soft { to look, glance	erbarmen } soften, melt (the erweichen } heart, etc.).
dröhnen	to boom	erblicken catch sight of, descry, espy.
fahren [fare]	to travel	erdröhnen thunder out. erfahren (travel till you see), arrive at the knowledge of, learn, experience.
füllen	to fill	erfüllen fulfil.
gehen	to go	ergehen issue, turn out (well or badly), happen.
(gözen = Lat. <i>gaudeo</i>)		ergötzen gladden, delight.
greifen	to grasp (at)	ergreifen get hold of, grasp, clutch.
heben	to heave, lift	erheben uplift, elevate.
hohe, hoch	high	erhöhen heighten.
hören	to hear	erhören to hear and grant (a prayer).
jagen	to hunt	erjagen hunt down, get by hunting.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
klar	clear, plain erklären declare, explain.
lassen	to let erlassen let off, let go.
leben	to live erleben live until, live to see.
legen	to lay erlegen lay (anything) down, lay dead, slay.
matt	weary, faint ermatten to weary, wear out, knock up.
neu	new erneuern renew.
quic ^t	alive, stirring erquicken revive, refresh.
reichen	to reach out erreichen reach, attain.
retten	to rid, save erretten rescue, deliver.
schauen	[show] to look, gaze erschauen (look so as to see), perceive, espy.
schlagen	to beat erschlagen beat to death, slay.
schöpfen	[scoop] draw water (Lat. <i>hauri-</i> , <i>haust-</i>) erschöpfen drain, empty, ex- haust.
steigen	to climb ersteigen climb up, scale, mount.
treten	to tread eretreten tread to death, crush.
wachsen	to wax, grow erwachsen grow up.
warten	to wait erwarten wait for, await.
würgen	[worry] to choke erwürgen choke to death, strangle, massacre.
zählen	[tell] to count erzählen recount, relate, tell.

b.—Becoming, Getting to be.

For example, *scheinen* to be in sight, be visible;
erscheinen to come in sight, become visible.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*get, grow, fall; a-* (as in *a-wake*), &c.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
bläß { [blank, bleach], bleich } pale	erblässen { grow pale, blench. erbleichen }
blühen to bloom	erblühen break into blossom.
halten to hold	erhalten receive.
frank sick, ill	erfranken fall sick.
leiden to (<i>be in</i> pain), suffer	erleiden (<i>come into</i> suffering), undergo.
liegen to lie, be lying	erliegen lie down, sink, suc- cumb.
matt faint, weary	ermatten grow faint or weary.
scheinen (to <i>be in</i> sight), to shine, seem	erscheinen (<i>come in</i> sight), appear.
staunen [stound] to <i>be in</i> a stound, in amazement	erstaunen fall into a stound, be astounded; whence Erstaunen astonishment.
wachen to be awake, to watch	erwachen wake up, awake.

c.—Repetition.

In a few words, *er-* is the same as the Latin *re-*, again.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
frisch fresh	erfrischen refresh.
kennen [ken] to know	erkennen recognise.
neu new	erneuern renew.
setzen to set, place	ersetzen replace, fill the place of.

5.—Ge-.

Ge- somewhat *Strengthens* the original notion of the verb: thus, *danken* to think, *gedenken* to *keep thinking*, to bear in mind; *gedanke mein* = remember me: *bieten*

to bid, in a variety of senses, but gebieten emphatically *to command*.

This Prefix has a different shade of meaning with almost every verb to which it is joined, and in some cases does not add much to the original meaning.

Of the five words gebären, gelingen, genesen, geschehen and gewinnen, the Roots bär, ling, nes, scheh and winn are no longer to be found separately.

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
(bären Old Germ.) to bear		gebären bear, bring forth.
bieten to bid		gebieten (bid, with authority), command.
denken to think		gedenken bear in mind, remember, intend.
fallen to fall		gefallen fall in with (one's wishes), please.
langen to long for		gelangen reach, arrive.
(singen Old Germ.) conn. with <i>lick</i> and <i>luck</i>		gelingen turn out well, prosper.
stehen to stand		genesen get over, recover.
wahr true, sure		geschehen come to pass, happen; whence:
warten to wait		Geschichte history, story.
(winnen Old Germ.) to win		gestehen (stand to a thing, keep to it), own, confess.
wohnen [Scotch <i>won</i>] to dwell		gewähren [warrant, guarantee] grant.
		gewartet await, expect, be on the look-out for.
		gewinnen win, gain.
		gewöhnen [wont] accustom: (compare <i>habit</i> and <i>inhabit</i>).

6.—**Miß-**.

Miß- expresses *Wrong, Failure, Mistake.*

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*mis-, dis-, ill-*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
brauchen to use	mißbrauchen misuse, abuse.
gefallen [see Pr. 5] to please	mißfallen displease.
gönnen to allow (without grudging or envy)	mißgönnen disallow, envy, grudge.
greifen to gripe, grasp	mißgreifen mistake; ("get hold of the <i>wrong</i> end of the stick").
handeln to handle, treat	mißhandeln ill-treat.
leiten to lead	mißleiten mislead.
thun to do	mißthun do amiss; <i>whence:</i> <i>Missethat</i> misdeed.
trauen to trust	mißtrauen mistrust, dis- trust.
verstehen to understand	mißverstehen misunderstand.

7.—**Ueber-** (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes, (*b*) and (*e*)," page 40.

Ueber, when Separable, keeps more to its literal meaning of *over* or *across*; while Ueber Inseparable, as here, often gives a *Figurative* meaning to the verb: thus, from treten to tread or step, ich trat über (Separ.) is *literal*, "I stept over, I stept across;" while ich übertrat is *figurative*, "I overstept, trans-gressed, tres-passed or violated (a law)."

In the following List, the Compound Verbs, as well as the English meanings given in *italics*, are all Figurative.

See "2.—**Durch-** = Inseparable, *N.B.*," page 43.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*over-, trans-; entirely,
too much, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
lassen to let, leave	überlassen let go; leave to one's fate, <i>give up, abandon.</i>
legen to lay	überlegen overlay; <i>turn over or weigh in one's mind, ponder.</i>
setzen to set, put	übersetzen <i>translate.</i>
tragen [drag] to carry	übertragen make (or hand) over, transfer; <i>commit.</i>
treiben to drive	übertreiben overdrive; <i>exaggerate.</i>
treten to tread, step	übertreten overstep; <i>transgress.</i>

8.—Um: (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes, (b) and (c)," page 40.

Um means *Round, About.*

Um Inseparable makes the verb *Transitive*: thus, "sie umstehen (Insep.) den Löwen = they stand-round (or surround) the lion"; while "sie stehen um" (Sep.), is merely "they stand about, or stand by."

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*round, about; circum-.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
Arm arm	umarmen em-brace, [bras is the French for arm].
gehen to go	umgehen go round (something).
stehen to stand	umstehen surround.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
schiffen [ship] to sail	umschiffen circumnavigate.
schreiben [scribe] to write	umschreiben circumscribe, paraphrase.

9.—Unter- (Inseparable).

See "Verb-Prefixes; (b) and (c)," page 40.

Unter has two meanings: that of the English *under*; and that of the Latin *inter* or the French *entre*=*between, among*. Unter Inseparable, as here, has oftenest the latter meaning. Thus: "ich halte ihn unter (Sep.)"= I hold him *under*;" but "ich unterhalte ihn (Insep.)"= I *entertain him*" [French *entretenir* from *entre* among, and *tenir* to hold].

See "2.—Durch- Inseparable, N.B.," page 43.

Unter Inseparable generally gives the verb a *Figurative* meaning: See "7.—Über- Inseparable," page 50.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*inter-, enter-, under-, &c.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
brechen to break	unterbrechen burst in between, break (one) off in the middle; <i>interrupt</i> [Lat. <i>rup</i> burst].
halten to hold, keep	unterhalten keep amongst you; <i>entertain, maintain</i> .

10.—Ber-.

Ber- is connected with the English *for-* in such words as *forbid, fordo, forget, forgive, forgo, forlorn,*

forsake, forspent, forswn. Also with the Latin *per-* and the French *par-* in perdition, perish, pardon. Thus:

Latin.	French.	German.	English.
donare perdonare	donner pardonner	geben vergeben	give forgive

a.—{ *Removal;*
Destruction;
Denial.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*for-, per-, de-, ex- (or e-); away, up, etc.*

From		Is derived the Compound Verb
achten	[heed] to esteem	verachten despise.
bergen	[bury] to hide	verbergen hide away, conceal.
bieten	to bid	verbieten forbid.
brennen	to burn	verbrennen (destroy by burning), burn up.
decken	[deck] to cover	verdecken cover out of sight, cover over; whence:
dienst		Verdeck deck of a ship.
dienen	to serve	verdienen deserve.
fallen	to fall	verfallen fall away, decay [Lat. <i>de</i> off, and <i>cad-</i> fall] decline.
fehlen	to fail, err	verfehlen lose by erring, miss (the right time, etc.)

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
geben to give	vergeben forgive, pardon [Lat. <i>per-dona-</i>].
gehen to go	vergehen pass away, perish.
heißen [hight] to name, tell, bid	verheißen (bid or speak a thing away), pro- mise.
flingen to sound, ring	verflingen die away, (said of a sound).
lassen to let, leave	verlassen leave alone, for- sake.
leihen to lend (lieren, liefern Old Germ.) to lose	verleihen lend away. versieren lose; whence: verloren, for-lorn, lorn; and: Verlust loss.
schmachten to pine	verschmachten pine away.
schwinden to dwindle	verschwinden vanish, dis- appear.
schwören to swear	verschwören deny or renounce by swearing, forswear; sich verschwören (swear oneself away), conspire.
senden to send (Lat. <i>mitt-</i>)	versenden send forth, e-mit.
sprechen to speak	versprechen (see verheißen), promise.
streichen [strike, stroke] to sweep, glide	verstreichen glide away, e-lapse [Lat. <i>lab-</i> slip], run out.
zeihen to blame, accuse	verzeihen to excuse.

*b.—Mistake, Falsehood.*ENGL. EQUIV.:—*mis-*; *amiss*, *ill*, *astray*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
denken to think	verdenken misunderstand, take in ill part.
färben to dye	verfärben dye a wrong colour, spoil in dyeing.
führen to lead	verführen mislead, lead astray, seduce.
fennen to know	verkennen misknow, misun- derstand.

*c.—Change into a new condition.*Sometimes merely *Strengthening* the original notion of a Verb.ENGL. EQUIV.:—Prefix *en-* (or *em-*); Suffixes *-en*, *-fy*, *-ize*, *-ish*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
breit broad, wide	verbreiten broaden, widen, spread.
darben to starve	verderben destroy.
edel noble	veredeln ennable.
ehren to honour	verehren to reverence, ve- nerate.
ein one [Lat. <i>un-us</i>]	vereinen bring into unity, unite.
färben to dye	verfärben change the colour of by dyeing.
genug, g'nug enough (Lat. <i>satis</i>)	vergnügen satisfy, gratify; whence: Vergnügen pleasure.
groß great	vergrößern enlarge, magnify.

	From		Is derived the Compound Verb
lang	long		verlängern lengthen.
mögen	may		vermögen be enabled, have the power.
nehmen	to take		vernehmnen (take into the mind), become aware of, perceive, hear, comprehend.
öffentlich [open-like]	public		veröffentlichen publish.
schön [sheen]	beautiful		verschönen, verschönern beautify, em-bell-ish.
[French <i>beau, belle</i>]			
setzen	to set, to place		versetzen (change the place of), transpose; ("turn the tables upon"), reply.
stehen	to stand		verstehen understand.
Stein	stone		versteinern turn into stone, pet- rify.
süß	sweet		versüßen sweeten.
trauen	to trust		vertrauen entrust or confide (to some one).
wickeln	to fold, wrap		verwickeln enfold, envelop, en- tangle.
wundern	to wonder		verwundern set a-wondering, astonish; also fall a-wonder- ing, be astonished.

11.—Voll=.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*full*.

	From		Is derived the Compound Verb
bringen	to bring		vollbringen bring to fulness, accomplish.
Ende	end		vollenden finish.
strecken	to stretch		vollstrecken }
ziehen	to draw		vollziehen } carry out, execute.

12.—**Wider-**.

Connected with the English *with-* in *withstand*, *withhold*, etc. [See Ch. 1, *a.*] It is shortened from *wieder* *again*, but it generally means *Against*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*with-*, *contra-*, *counter-*, *ob-*, *re-*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
rufen call (Lat. <i>voca-</i>)	widerrufen recall, revoke, countermand.
sprechen speak (Lat. <i>dic-</i>)	widersprechen contradict.
stehen stand [Lat. <i>sist-</i>]	widerstehen withstand, resist.

13.—**Zer-**.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*dis-* or *di-*; *asunder*, *in pieces*, *to pieces*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
brechen to break	zerbrechen break in pieces, break in two, etc.
Glied member, limb	zergliedern dismember, dissect.
legen to lay	zerlegen (lay in pieces), take to pieces, dissect.
reißen to rend	zerreißen rend in pieces.
rinnen to run, flow	zerrinnen flow asunder, melt, break (as a wave).
schellen to dash, crash	zerschellen dash to pieces.
schmelzen to melt or smelt	zerschmelzen melt away.
splittern to split or splinter	zersplittern split in pieces.
springen to spring, burst	zerspringen burst asunder, crack.
stieben to fly about like dust (<i>Staub</i>)	zerstieben fly asunder, dis- perse.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
stören to stir, rummage	zerstören disturb, destroy.
streuen to strew	zerstreuen scatter.
theisen [deal] to part, share	zertheisen part in sunder, divide, disperse.
trennen to part, sever	zertrennen dissever, disjoin.

SEPARABLE VERB-PREFIXES.

See "Verb-Prefixes (*b*), (*c*), and *N.B. 1*," page 40.14.—*Ab-*.ENGL. EQUIV.:—*off* [see Ch. 13, 15]; *de-*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
gehen to go.	abgehen go off.
hangen to hang (as a cloak hangs)	abhängen de-pend [from Lat. <i>pende-</i> hang].
nehmen to take	abnehmen fall away, decrease, decline.
reisen to travel	abreisen set off, set out on a journey, depart.
pflücken to pluck.	abpflücken pluck off.
schrecken to scare, terrify	abschrecken scare away, de-ter [Lat. <i>terre-</i> scare].
thun to do	abthun (do off), doff, take off; settle (a matter).

15.—*An-*.ENGL. EQUIV.:—*on, at, to, up against; ad-, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
blicken to look, glance	anblicken look at, glance at.
fahren [fare] to travel, drive	ansfahren come driving; dart, fly or snap at.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
fassen [fasten] to grasp	anfassen fasten upon, clutch hold of.
hängen to hang (as we hang a cloak, Lat. <i>pend-</i>)	anhängen append; whence: Anhang appendage, appendix; and: Anhänger adherent.
klopfen to knock	an Klopfen knock (at a door).
kommen to come	ankommen arrive.
nehmen to take	annehmen accept, adopt, admit.
schauen [show] to look	anschauen look upon, view, contemplate.
sehen to see, look	ansehen look at; whence: Angesicht (the part of a person which is looked at), countenance.
setzen to set, put	ansetzen affix, put (to one's lips, etc.)
spielen to play (Lat. <i>lud-</i>)	anspielen allude.
stoßen to push, knock	anstoßen knock against (as one glass against another), to hob-and-nob.
thun to do	anthun (do on), don, put on.
wenden [wend] to turn	anwenden turn to use, apply.

16.—Auf.

a.—Up, Upon [see Ch. 12.]

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
gehen to go	aufgehen go up, rise.
heben to heave, lift	aufheben upheave, lift up, pick up.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
Har clear	aufflären clear up, explain.
richten [<i>righten</i> , from <i>recht</i> right]	aufrichten set upright, erect, raise.
sehen to see, look	auffsehen oversee; also, look up.
seyn to be	auffeyn be up, be risen, be out of bed.
stehen to stand	aufstehen stand up, get up, rise.

*b.—Opening, Unloosing.*ENGL. EQUIV.:—*open, up; un-, dis-*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
brechen to break	aufbrechen break open; also, break up, decamp.
lösen to loosen	auflösen unloose, dissolve, solve (a riddle).
machen to make, do	aufmachen to open.
schließen to close	ausschließen unclose, unlock.
seyn to be	auffeyn be open.
thun to do	aufsthun [Old Engl. <i>dup</i> , do up] undo, open.

*17.—Aus-.**a.—Out* [See Ch. 4, b].ENGL. EQUIV.:—*out-, ex- (or e-), dis-, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
nehmen to take (Lat. <i>cap-, cep-</i>)	ausnehmen to except; whence: Ausnahme exception.
rufen to cry	ausrufen cry out, exclaim [Lat. <i>clama-</i> cry].
speien to spue, spit	ausspeien spit out, disgorge.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
theilen to deal, divide	austheilen deal out, distribute.
wandern to wander	auswandern wander out, emigrate; whence: Auswanderer an emigrant.
weichen to give ground	ausweichen move out of the way.

b.—Out and out, thoroughly.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*up*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
füllen to fill	ausfüllen fill up.
liefern to deliver	aussiefern deliver up.
trinken to drink	austrinken drink up.

18.—Bei-.

{ *By the side of;*
 To the side of, to the help of.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*by, ad-; up to, sub-, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
bringen to bring	beibringen bring up, bring forward, adduce [Lat. <i>duc-</i> lead], suggest [Lat. <i>ger-</i> carry].
kommen to come	beikommen come near, come up to, equal.
springen to spring, leap	beispringen run to the help of, succour [Lat. <i>curr-</i> run].
stehen to stand	beistehen stand by (any one), assist [Lat. <i>sist-</i> stand].

19.—Dar-.

Dar- [*there*; see Ch. 1, *a*] gives the notion of *Presenting* an object to the eye, setting it *there* before you.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*forth, out, pre-, pro-, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
bieten to bid	darbieten hold out, make an offer of, proffer.
führen to lead	darführen lead forth.
reichen to reach out	darreichen hand or offer.
stellen [in-stal] to set	darstellen set before any one, to present.

20.—Durch- (Separable).

See “2.—Durch- (Inseparable),” page 43.

Durch [through], when Separable, generally means *right through, thoroughly*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
fallen to fall	durchfallen fall through, fail.
gehen to go	durchgehen walk off, run away.
setzen to set, put	durchsetzen carry out, accomplish.

21.—Ein-.

The Prefix **Ein-** is only another form of the Preposition **In**—*in* or *into*. It is opposed to **Aus-**: as, einschiffen [in-ship] to *em-bark*, to ship; ausschiffen [out-ship] to *de-bark*, to land.

*a.—In.*ENGL. EQUIV.:—*in, en-* (or *em-*).

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
driicken to press	eindrücken press in, impress.
fassen to grasp, clasp	einfassen enclose, enshase or set (in a frame, border, etc.)
gehen to go	eingehen go in, enter.
nehmen to take	einnehmen take in, receive.
schenken [skink] to pour	einschenken (pour in from a bottle or tap, <i>hence</i>): pour out or draw for any one.
Schiff ship	einschiffen to ship; and: sich einschiffen em-bark.
schlafen to sleep	einschlafen (get into sleep), fall asleep.
sehen to see	einsehen see into; whence: Einsicht insight.
stürmen to storm	einstürmen get in by storming.
wandern to wander	einwandern immigrate.

b.—To sleep.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
singen to sing	einsingen sing to sleep.
tanzen to dance	eintanzen dance to sleep.
wiegen to rock	einwiegen rock to sleep.

*22.—Empor.*ENGL. EQUIV.:—*up, aloft, on high.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
ziehen [tow, tug] to draw	emporziehen draw up, hoist.

23.—*Entgegen-*.

Derived from *ent-* and *gegen* against [see Ch. 10, b]; hence it means *Opposite, Facing you.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
kommen to come	entgegenkommen come opposite, meet.
setzen to set, put (Lat. <i>pon-</i> , <i>pos-</i>)	entgegensemzen set against, op- pose; whence the participle entgegengesetzt opposite.

24.—*Fort-*.

Connected with *forth, further* [see Ch. 1, b].

a.—*Departure.*

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*away, off.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
eilen to hasten	forteilen hasten away, hurry off.
ziehen to draw	fortziehen move away, set out (on a journey).

b.—*Continuance.*

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*further, onward, on.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
eilen to hasten	forteilen hasten onwards.
fahren travel	fortfahren } go on, continue.
setzen set	fortsetzen }
wandeln [wander] walk	fortwandeln walk on.

25.—*Heim-*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*home, homewards*, [see Ch. 18, b].

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
eilen to hasten	heimeilen hasten home.
schiffen [ship] to sail	heimschiffen sail homeward.
suchen to seek	heimsuchen search narrowly, explore; visit (for sin).

26.—*Her-*.

Her means *hither*, and implies *Motion Towards* the speaker or spectator; as *hin hence*, implies *Motion From*. These two words may often be translated by *come* and *go*: thus, *frieden* to creep, *herfrieden* to come creeping, *hinkrieden*, go creeping (away).

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*hither, this way, on, to me, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
rufen to call	herrufen call to oneself, call to one's side.
wehen [wave] to blow, waft, drift through the air	herwehen come wafting (to- wards one).

27.—*Herum-*.

Compound of *her hither*, and *um about*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*round, around, about*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
lagern [layer, lair] to couch	(sich) herumlagern lay or couch (one's self) around.

28.—*Hervor-*.

Compound of *her hither*, and *vor before, forwards*; hence it means *Forward Towards* the speaker or spectator, *out hither*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*forth, forward, out.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
nehmen to take	hervornehmen take out, bring out.
rennen to run	hervorrennen come running out.
springen to spring	hervorspringen spring forth.
stürzen to dash, rush	hervorstürzen come rushing out.
treten to tread, step	hervortreten step forth.

29.—*Hin-*.

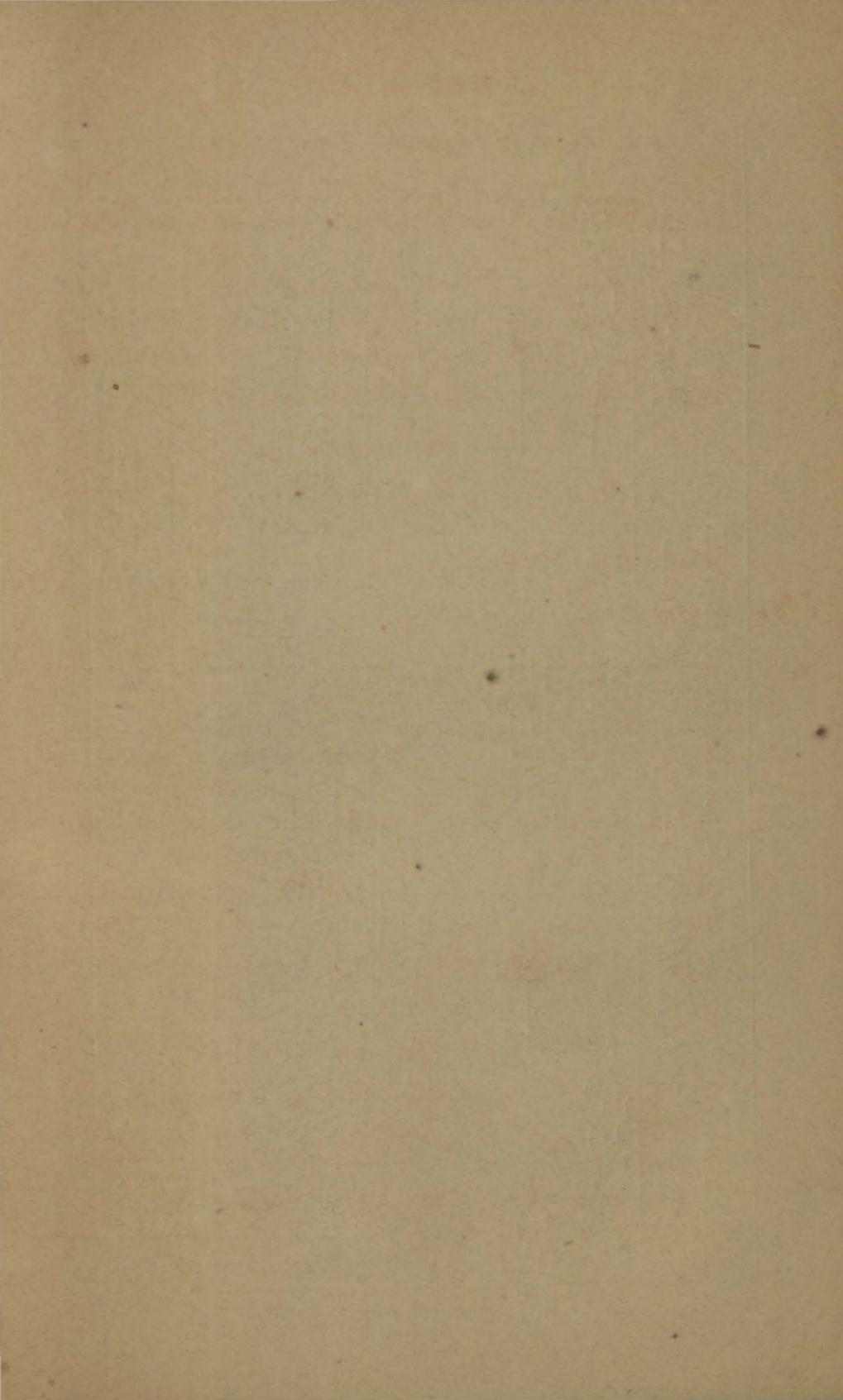
Hin hence, expresses *Motion From* the speaker or spectator; and often includes *Motion Towards* or *Up-to* some other object.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*away, along, up, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
fallen to fall	hinfallen fall along (on one's knees, face, etc.).
kriechen to creep	hinfrierchen creep along, creep up to.
schauen [show] to look	hinschauen cast one's eyes, take a survey.
treiben to drive	hintreiben drive along, drive up.
treten to tread, step	hintreten step along, step up.
werfen [warp] to throw, cast	hinwerfen cast away, throw (from you).

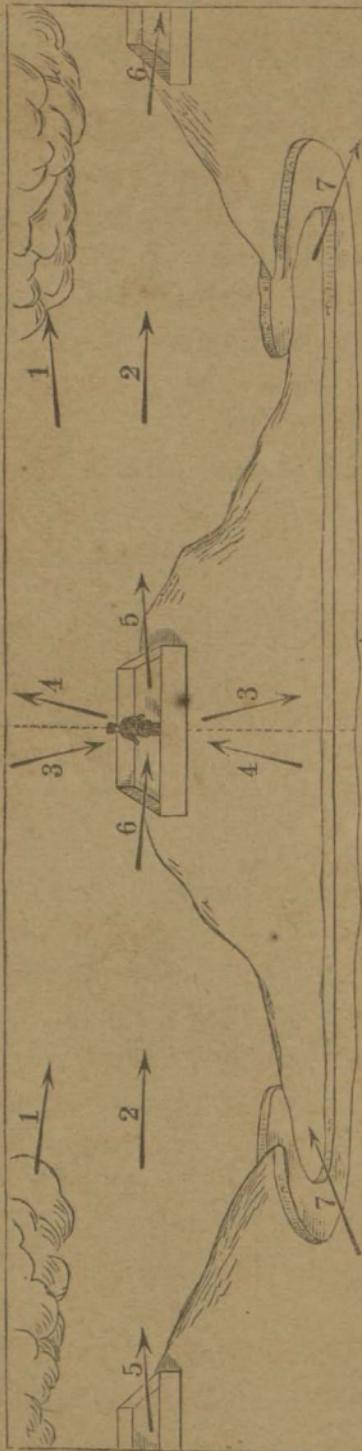
30.—Compounds of *Her* and *Hin*.

With Verbs of Motion, such as “go, come, send, fall, etc.,” where the English would simply use “up, down, in, out, over,” the Germans generally join to such words either *Her* hither (expressing motion *towards*), or *Hin* hence (expressing motion *from*); de-



COMPOUNDS OF *Hier* AND *Hin*.

— *Hier Hither.* — — *Hin Hence.* —



1. woher? (from) where hither? Whither?
 2. daher (from) there hither, Thence.
 3. herab, hernieder, herunter Down hither.
 4. herauf Up hither.
 5. heraus Out hither.
 6. herein In hither,
 7. hervor Over hither.
1. wohin? where hence? Whither?
 2. dahin there hence, Thither.
 3. hinab, hینunter Down hence.
 4. hinauf Up hence.
 5. hinaus Out hence.
 6. hinein In hence.
 7. hینüber Over hence.

fining more closely the direction of the action with regard to the speaker or spectator. Thus, the rain drops from the clouds *herab hither-down*, because it descends *to us*; but a stone drops into a well *hinab hence-down*, because it descends *from us*. If you hear a knock at your door, you say "*H herein! hither-in!*" that is, Come in: but if you bid a dog enter his kennel, you say "*Hinein! hence-in!*" that is, Go in.

The following Compounds of *Her* and *Hin* are explained by the DIAGRAM opposite.

Of *Her*: *daher*, *herab*, *herauf*, *heraus*, *herein*, *her-nieder*, *herüber*, *herunter*.

Of *Hin*: *dahin*, *hinab*, *hinauf*, *hinaus*, *hinein*, *hin-über*, *hinunter*.

A few of the Examples occurring in the book are here given. — The five words *Da*, *Ab*, *Auf*, *Ein*, *Unter* are shown on the *left* hand compounded with *Her*, and on the *right* compounded with *Hin*.

Compounds of <i>Her</i> .	Compounds of <i>Hin</i> .
<i>daher-kommen</i> come on, come along, <i>this way</i> .	<i>dahin-ziehen</i> travel thither, <i>that way, or away</i> .
<i>herab-gießen</i> gush down, pour down (<i>upon us, like rain</i>).	<i>hinab-reißen</i> tear down or away (<i>from us, as a flood does a bridge</i>).
<i>herab-steigen</i> descend (<i>to us</i>).	<i>hinab-steigen</i> descend (<i>from us</i>).
<i>herauf-steigen</i> ascend.	<i>hinauf-steigen</i> ascend.
<i>herein-lassen</i> let in, cause to come in, admit.	<i>hinein-fallen</i> fall in.
	<i>hinein-führen</i> lead in, introduce [Lat. <i>duc-</i> lead].
	<i>hinein-treten</i> [tread] walk in, step in.

Compounds of <i>her</i> .	Compounds of <i>hin</i> .
herunter-neigen stoop down (towards us).	hinunter-neigen stoop down (away from us).
herunter-steigen descend.	hinunter-steigen descend.

31.—Hoch-.ENGL. EQUIV.:—*high, highly* [See Ch. 9, b].

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
beglücken to bless, favour	hochbeglücken favour highly.
schätzen to treasure, prize, estimate	hochschätzen prize highly.

32.—Los-.ENGL. EQUIV.:—*loose, away*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
reißen to tear	losreißen tear loose, tear away.

33.—Mit-.ENGL. EQUIV.:—*with (one), together*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
bringen to bring	mitbringen bring (with one).
laufen to run	mitlaufen run together (with some one).
nehmen to take	mitnehmen take (with one).

34.—Nach-.

Nach, after, is connected with naſh *nigh* [see Ch. 10, a]; whence nächſt *nighest or next*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*after, sub-, etc.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
folgen to follow	nachahmen take after, imitate.
gehen to go	nachfolgen follow next, succeed. nachgehen go after, follow.

35.—Nieder-

Connected with *Nether*, *be-neath*, *under-neath*. [See Ch. 1, *a*].

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*down, downwards.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
bücken to bow, bend	niederbücken bend downwards.
gehen to go	niedergehen go down, set.
lassen to let	(sich) niederschaffen let (oneself) down, condescend.
legen to lay	niederlegen lay down.
neigen to incline, stoop	niederneigen stoop downwards.
strecken to stretch	niederstrecken stretch down, lay flat, to floor.

36.—Über- (Separable).

See "Über Inseparable," page 50.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*over, across.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
gehen to go	übergehen go over, pass over, desert (to the enemy &c.)
treiben to drive	übertreiben drive (something) over or across.
treten to tread	übertreten step over or across, go over to another party.

37.—Um: (Separable).

See "Um Inseparable," page 51.

*a.—Revolution.*ENGL. EQUIV.:—*round, about; over* (=topsy-turvy).

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
gehen to go	umgehen go round, revolve.
sehen to see	(sich) umsehen look round, look about.
werfen [warp] to throw	umwerfen overthrow, overturn.

*b.—Transition, Transposition.*ENGL. EQUIV.:—*trans-*.

pflanzen to plant	umpflanzen transplant.
schiffen to ship	umschiffen trans-ship.

38.—Unter: (Separable).

See "Unter Inseparable," page 52.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*down, under* [See Ch. 2].

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
gehen to go	untergehen go down, sink, set; perish.
halten to hold	unterhalten hold under.

39.—Vor:ENGL. EQUIV.:—*fore-, pro-, pre-; before, to.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
fällen to fall	vorfällen fall before (any one), fall out, happen.
haben to have	vorhaben have before <i>you</i> ; hence to be after, aim at.

	From	Is derived the Compound Verb
kommen	to come	vorkommen come before, appear, happen.
lesen	to read	vorlesen read (before a person), read to.
sagen	to say	vorsagen say (before a person), say to.
sehen	to see	vorsehen foresee, provide.
setzen	to set, place.	vorsetzen to place before you. sich etwas vorsetzen to resolve on something.
stellen [in-stal]	to set	vorstellen set before (any one), to present, introduce, represent.

40.—*Weg*.ENGL. EQUIV.:—*away* [See Ch. 10, b].

	From	Is derived the Compound Verb
gehen	to go	weggehen go away.
laufen	to run	weglaufen run away.

41.—*Wieder*.

Wieder again was originally the same word as *wider against* (see Pr. 12).

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*again, back, re-*.

	From	Is derived the Compound Verb
hallen	to sound	wiederhallen sound again, resound, echo.
kehren	to turn	wiederkehren turn back, return; Wiederkehr a return.

42.—**Zu:***a.—To.*ENGL. EQUIV.:—*to, at, on.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
hören to hear	zuhören (hear to), listen.
rufen to cry, call	zurufen call to (any one).
schauen to look	zuschauen look at, look on; hence:
	Zuschauer looker-on, spectator.
tragen to carry	zutragen bring to pass; and: sich zutragen bring itself about, come to pass, happen.

b.—To, so as to shut.

Thus, die Thüre zuthun=to put the door *to*, that is, to shut. With zuthun, zumachen compare aufthun, aufmachen, Pref. 16, *b*, page 60.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*to, up.*

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
frieren to freeze	zufrieren freeze all over.
machen to make, do	zumachen shut.
schließen to lock	zuschließen lock up.
thun to do, put	zuthun put to, shut.

43.—**Zurück.**

From zu to, and Rücken [ridge; see Ch. 8], the back; hence zurück to the back, backwards.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *back, re-, with-*.

From	Is derived the Compound Verb
bringen to bring	zurückbringen bring back.
treten to tread, step	zurücktreten step back, retire.
werfen to throw	zurückwerfen throw back.
ziehen to draw (Lat. <i>trah-</i>)	(sich) zurückziehen with-draw, re-treat.

NOUN-PREFIXES.

A Noun-Prefix is a syllable which, if placed before a word, makes a *Derivative Noun*.

EXERCISE: — Find 20 Noun-Prefixes in the following sentence: “The injustice of this Upstart and his understrappers worked so much mischief among his subjects, that their discontent soon found an outlet in uproars and revolts; while the enemy took advantage of this anarchy to make inroads on his provinces, and even made an onslaught on the suburbs of his metropolis, which proved the precursor (that is, forerunner) of his speedy downfall.”

44.—*Ge-*.

This Prefix is Collective when put before a Noun; but Abstractive or Concretive when prefixed to a Verb.

a.—*Collective.*

Ge-, prefixed to a Noun, signifies a *Number* or *Collection* of things: as, *Berg* a mountain, *Gebirge* mountain-range, or a whole system of mountains.

From the Noun	Comes the Derivative Noun	
Bein bone; and	}	<i>Gebein</i> , <i>Gerippe</i> , skeleton.
Rippe rib		
Berg mountain	}	<i>Gebirge</i> mountain-range. <i>Gebrüder</i> brothers in partnership, as: die <i>Gebr.</i> Smith Smith Bro ^s .
Bruder brother		

From the Noun	Comes the Derivative Noun.
Feder feather; and Flügel wing	Gefieder, Geflügel feathered or winged tribe, birds.
Feld field	Gefilde collection of fields, plain, open country.
Schwester sister	Geschwister brothers and sisters.
Stern star, (Lat. <i>stella</i>)	Gestirn con-stella-tion.
Vogel [fowl] bird	Gevögel birds (taken as a whole).

b.—Abstractive or Concretive.

Ge-, prefixed to the root of a Verb, signifies the *Doing* of something (*Abstract*), or the *Thing which is done* (*Concrete*). From *singen* to sing, we have *Gesang* *song*, the act or art of singing, (*Abstract noun*); and also *Gesang a song*, the thing which is sung, (*Concrete noun*). The *majority* of nouns thus formed have a *Concrete* meaning.

N.B.—In many cases a *Suffix* (-t, or -de) is also added to the root of the Verb, as in *Ge-sich-t*, *Ge-stal-t*, *Ge-sta-de*, *Ge-bäu-de*.

Some Nouns are formed by this *Suffix* alone, without a Prefix, as: *Tha-t* *dee-d*, *Saa-t* *see-d*, *Glü-th* [*glee-d*] *glow*, *Sich-t* *sigh-t*, *Gebur-t* [*from gebären*] *bir-th*, *Blü-the* *blossom*, *Kun-de* [*cun-nинг*] *knowledge*, *Fren-de* *joy*, *Fag-d* *hunt*.

From the Verb	Comes the Derivative Noun
bauen to build	Gebäude a building.
(bären Old Germ.) to bear	Geberde (bearing), gesture.
beißen to bite	Gebiß that which bites, set of teeth; that which is bitten, the bit (in a bridle).
brüllen [<i>brool</i>] to roar	Gebrüll roaring, a roar.
denken to think	Gedanke thought; a thought.

From the Verb	Comes the Derivative Noun
fahren [fare] to travel	Gefahr danger, peril [Lat. <i>peri-</i> to pass through].
fühlen to feel	Gefühl feeling, emotion; a feeling, a sentiment.
hören to hear	Gehör a hearing; (the sense of) hearing.
leiten to lead (<i>lin-ge</i> n Old Germ.) to prosper, conn. with <i>lick</i>	Geleit escort. (Gelück), Glück luck, happiness.
malen to paint	Gemälde a painting.
rollen to roll	Geroll a rolling noise, rumbling.
singen to sing	Gesang singing, song; a song.
schaffen [shape] to create, make, do	{Geschöpf creature. Geschäft business.
schenken to present	Geschenk a present.
schmecken [smack] to taste	Geschmaß taste, relish; (the sense of) taste.
schreien to cry	Geschrei crying; a cry.
schwätzen to chat	Geschwätz a babbling, babble, chatter.
setzen to set	Gesetz (settled thing), law, statute [Lat. <i>statu-</i> to set].
sehen to see	Gesicht sight, eyesight; a vision; visage, face.
stehen to stand	Gestade (standing or landing place), bank.
stellen to place, to set	Gestalt form, shape; a figure.

From the Verb		Comes the Derivative Noun
tragen	[drag] to carry	Getraide* grain, corn.
trinken	to drink	Getränk a drink, beverage.
wachsen	to wax, grow	Gewächs a plant.
walten	[wield] to rule, to sway	Gewalt power, force, violence.
winden	to wind	Gewand garment.
wiegen, wägen	to weigh	Gewicht weight.
wissen	[wit] to know, (Lat. <i>sci-</i>)	Gewissen [Old Engl. <i>in-wit</i>] con-science.
wölben	[Lat. <i>volv-</i>] to vault	Gewölbe vault, arch.

45.—Miß-.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*Mis-, dis-, de-, un-*.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun
Form	form	Mißform deformity.
Geberde	gesture	Mißgeberde grimace.
Geburt	birth	Mißgeburt misbirth, monster.
Jahr	year	Mißjahr bad, unproductive year.
Lang	sound	Mißlang dissonance, discord.
Muth	[mood] mind	Mißmuth displeasure, discontent.

Mißlich [miss-like] *a-miss*, comes from the Verb *müssen* to miss.—So that the Prefix *miß* was originally a word of itself; the same, no doubt, is true of all Prefixes and Suffixes.

* In old German *Getragidi*, that which is *carried*; the fruit which wandering nations had to *carry* with them, as they were sure not to find it wild. Hence fruits that are found in a wild state, as rice, potatoes, etc., are *not* included under *Getraide*.

(Grimm, quoted by Humboldt in his "*Ansichten der Natur.*")

46.—*Un-*.

Un- is *Negative*, like the English *un-*, *in-*; but it often expresses something *Monstrous*, *unnatural*, or *hateful*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*Un-*, *in-*, *mis-*, *dis-*.

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
Bestand	constancy
Gestalt	shape
Glück	luck, fortune
Heil	health, safety
Kraut	herb
Mensch	man
Muth	mood, temper
Stern	star
Thier [deer]	animal, beast
Wille	will, pleasure
	Unbestand inconstancy.
	Ungestalt misshapen thing.
	Unglück misfortune.
	Unheil harm, damage.
	Unkraut weed.
	Ummensch inhuman wretch, a monster of a man.
	Umnuth ill-temper, ill-humour.
	Unstern evil star, dis-aster [from Lat. <i>astrum</i> a star].
	Unthier (not even a beast), a monster.
	Unwille displeasure, indignation.

ADJECTIVE-PREFIXES.

An Adjective-Prefix is a syllable which, when placed before a word, makes a *Derivative Adjective*.

Examples of English Adjectives formed by Prefixes.—“He spoke in an *offhand* manner; he acted in an *underhand* way.” Here *off* and *under* are Adjective-Prefixes, changing the Noun *hand* into an Adjective. In the words “*unwise*, *inconstant*,” *un-* and *in-* are Adjective-Prefixes, changing the Adjectives *wise* and *constant* into new Adjectives with a contrary meaning.

47.—*Be-*.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
Hand hand (Anglo-S. <i>cweman</i> , please, suit)	befind handy, deft, nimble. bequem comfortable, snug.
Root conn. with <i>rath</i> (early), and <i>rather</i>	bereit ready.
wissen to wit, know	bewußt conscious.

48.—*Ge-*.

Prefixed to the root of a Verb, it means that *Which does or suffers* (an action). Prefixed to Adjectives, it is only *Strengthening*.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
heim home	geheint secret.
(lich Old Germ.) like	(gleich), gleich like, equal.
meßen to mete out, measure	gemäß meet, fitting, com- mensurate.
nah nigh, near	{ genau close, strict, exact. genug enough.
recht right	gerecht righteous, just.
schwinden to vanish	geschwind swift, sudden.
treu true (Lat. <i>fid-us</i>)	getreu faithful.
wahr true [Lat. <i>ver-us</i>]	gewähr aware.
wissen to know	gewiß certain, sure.

49.—*Un-*.

Negative like the English *un-*, *in-*. Connected with *ohne without*.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
bekannt known	unbekannt unknown.
bewußt conscious	umbewußt unconscious.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
endlich having an end, finite	unendlich endless, infinite.
geheuer natural, safe	ungeheuer unnatural, mon- strous, enormous; <i>whence the Noun</i> Ungeheuer a monster.
gemischt mixed, mingled	ungemischt unmixed.
gern [yearn-ing] gladly, willingly (Adverb)	ungern unwillingly, not gladly.
Gestalt shape	ungegestalt unshapely, mis- shapen.
getreu faithful	ungetreu unfaithful, faith- less.
recht right	unrecht wrong.
sichtbar visible	unsichtbar invisible.
treu true, faithful	untreu unfaithful.
vergänglich perishable	unvergänglich imperishable.

II. SUFFIXES.

A SUFFIX is a syllable put *after* a word, to form a new word with some difference of meaning.

Thus in the words *manly*, *manful*, *mannis*, *mannikin*, *manhood*, the syllables *-ly*, *-ful*, *-ish*, *-kin*, *-hood* are all Suffixes added to the word *man*. Again, from *manly* and *manful* we can form the new words *manliness* and *manfully* by adding the Suffixes *-ness* and *-ly*. Suffixes are used chiefly in making Nouns, Adjectives and Verbs. The most important are the Noun- and Adjective-Suffixes.

NOUN-SUFFIXES.

A Noun-Suffix is a syllable which, if placed after any word, makes a *Derivative Noun*.

Examples of English Nouns formed by Suffixes:—

<u>Adding the Suffix</u>	<u>To the Root</u>	<u>We form the Noun</u>
er, or, ster	brew, act, spin	brewer, actor, spinster.
ery, ry, y	fish, herald, flatter	fishery, heraldry, flattery.
dom, ship, hood	king	kingdom, kingship, kinghood.
head	God	Godhead.
ity, ation	civil, civilize	civility, civilization.
d	do, sow	deed, seed.
t, th	{ see, grow high, slow	sight, growth. height, sloth.
ness	slow, sad	slowness, sadness.

Adding the Suffix	To the Root	We form the Noun
Diminutives	kin, en	lambkin, chicken.
	ling	darling, gosling.
	let	ringlet, bracelet.
	et	floweret, pocket.
	el	satchel.
le	bind, shoot, lade	bundle, shuttle, ladle.
ess, ine, en	giant, hero, fox	giantess, heroine, vixen.

1.— *-chen, -lein, -ling, -el.*

These are all *Diminutive*; *-chen* corresponds to the English *-kin* [see Ch. 9, a]; *-lein* and *-ling* to *-ling*.

But *-chen* and *-lein* generally express *Fondness*, so that children even call their parents *Papachen*, *Mamachen* [papa-kin, mama-kin]; while *-ling* oftener implies *Contempt*, as *Hof* court, *Höfling* courtling, courtier; *Witzling* witling, a would-be wit.

ENGL. EQUIV.:— *-kin, -ling, -let, -et, -el.*

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
Blume [bloom] flower	Blümchen, Blümlein floweret.
finden to find	Fündling foundling.
Frau lady, Mrs.	Fräulein young lady, Miss.
früh early	Frühling (early season) spring.
Margarete Margaret	Gretchen, Gretel Maggie, Meg.
Günst favour	Günstling favorite, minion.
jung young	Jüngling [youngling] youngster, youth.
Knochen bone	Knöchel knuckle.
Lamm lamb	Lämmchen lambkin.
lehren to teach	Lehrling pupil, apprentice.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun
lieb	dear	Liebchen [dearling] darling.
Maid, Magd	maid	Liebling fondling, favorite. Mädchen, Mägdelein girl, maiden.
Sacke	sack	Säckel satchel.
saugen	to suck	Säugling suckling, babe.
schmettern	to flutter	Schmetterling [little flutterer] butterfly.
Thal	dale	Thälchen dell.
viola,	Latin for violet	Veilchen violet.
Viertelstunde	quarter of an hour	Viertelstündchen a little quarter of an hour.
Weile	(a) while	Weilchen (a) little while.
Welt	world	Weltling worldling.
Wurm	worm	Würmchen little worm.

2.—-e, -heit, -keit, -niß.

These Suffixes are added chiefly to Adjectives, and form Nouns signifying an *Abstract Quality*.

-heit corresponds to *-head*, *-hood*, (as in Godhead, manhood); and -niß to *-ness*. -keit is only another form of -heit, and is chiefly added to Adjectives ending in -ig, -lich, -bar, etc. From rein clean, comes Reinheit cleanliness, purity; but from reinlich cleanly, comes Reinlichkeit cleanliness.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-head*, *-hood*, *-ness*, *-t*, *-th*, *-ity*, *-itude*, &c.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun
breit	broad, wide	Breite breadth, width.
dankbar	thankful	Dankbarkeit thankfulness.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun
finster	dark	Finsterniß darkness.
gleich	like, equal	Gleichniß likeness; <i>but</i>
Gott	God (Lat. <i>De-us</i>)	Gleichheit equality.
göttlich	godlike, divine	Gottheit Godhead, Deity.
groß	great	Göttlichkeit divineness.
gut	good	Größe magnitude, size.
gütig	kind	Güte goodness, kindness.
herrlich	lordly	Gütigkeit kindness.
		Herrlichkeit lordliness, magni-
		fidence.
hohe	high	Höhe height; <i>but</i>
hohl	hollow	Höheit Highness.
Kind	child	Höhle cave, cavern; <i>but</i>
klar	clear	Höhlheit hollowness.
lang	long	Kindheit childhood.
leer [lear]	empty	Klarheit clearness, splendour.
rein	pure, clean	Länge length.
reinslich	cleanly	Leere emptiness.
schön	beautiful	Reinheit purity, cleanness.
treu	true, faithful	Reinlichkeit cleanliness.
ver-gangen	by-gone	Schönheit beauty.
wahr	[Lat. <i>ver-us</i>] true	Treue faithfulness.
weit	wide, far	Vergangenheit the Past.
		Wahrheit verity, truth.
		Weite width, distance.

3.—*-ei, -erei, -ang.*a.—*-ei, -erei.*

These are the same as the English *-y, -ry, -ery,* and mean a *Business, or trade, Place of business, &c.*

They often imply *Contempt* or *Dislike*, as from *Pfaffe* [Lat. *papa*, pope] priest, comes *Pfafferei* priestcraft. Compare our popery, foolery, frippery.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-y*, *-ry*, *-ery*.

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
brauen to brew	Brauerei brewing; also brewery, brewhouse.
Dieb thief	Dieberei thievery.
fischen to fish	Fischerei fishery.
geden to mock, rally	Gederei mockery, raillery.
reiten to ride	Reiterei horsemanship.
Reiter rider, trooper	Reiterei cavalry.
schmeicheln to flatter	Schmeichelei flattery.
Sclave slave	Sclaverei slavery.
Spitzbube rogue, knave	Spitzbüberei rougery, knavery.

b.—*-ung*.

This Suffix corresponds to the English *-ing*.

It is added to the root of a Verb, and marks the *Doing* of an action (Abstract Noun): thus, from *fällen* to fell, die Fällung eines Baumes the *felling* of a tree; from *zeichnen* to draw, die Zeichnung eines Planes the *drawing* of a plan. But sometimes also the *Thing done* (Concrete Noun): as, eine Zeichnung a *drawing*, a *picture*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-ing*, *-tion*, *-sion*, *-al*, *-ment*, *-y*, *-age*, *-ture*, *-ance*, *-ence*, etc.

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
beschreiben to describe	Beschreibung description.
entfernen to remove	Entfernung removal.
erfüllen to fill, to fulfil	Erfüllung fulfilment.

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
liefern to de-liver	Lieferung delivery.
öffnen to open	Öffnung opening.
verstopfen to stop up	Verstopfung stoppage, obstruction.
vorlesen to read to	Vorlesung lecture, pre-lection
vorsehen to foresee, to provide.	Vorsehung Providence [Lat. <i>pro</i> before, & <i>vide-</i> see].

4.—*-er, -er, -ster.*

These Suffixes form Nouns of the Masculine Gender, indicating a man's *employment*.

a.—*He who does.*

-er, when added to the root of a Verb, marks *Him who does* (an action): as, wandern, to wander, *Wanderer*, he who wanders, *wanderer*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-er, -or, -ster.*

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
beschützen to protect	Beschützer protector.
gebieten to bid, command	Gebieter commander, master.
haschen to catch	Häscher catcher, bailiff.
hängen to hang	Hänger hanger.
henken to kill by hanging	Henker hangman.
hüten to heed, tend, watch	Hüter keeper, steward.
jagen to hunt	Jäger huntsman.
rauben to rob	Räuber robber.
reiten to ride	Reiter rider, trooper; but Ritter chevalier, knight.
retten to rid, deliver	Retter deliverer.

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
schneiden to cut	Schneider tailor; but Schnitter reaper.
singen to sing	Singer singer; but Sänger songster, minstrel.
wandern to wander	Wanderer wanderer, traveller.
weben to weave	Weber weaver.
wüthen to rage	Wüther one who rages; <i>whence</i> Wütherich tyrant, cruel man.
zapfen to tap	Zapfer tapster.
zechen to tope	Zecher toper, boon companion.

b.—*He who is busied with.*

-er, -ner, -ster, added to Nouns, mark *Him who attends to or is busied with* (a thing); as Schaf sheep, Schäfer shepherd; Rede speech, talk, Redner speech-maker, orator; Schuh shoe, Schuster cobbler; (-ster is rather *Contemptuous*; shoemaker would be Schuhmacher. So also our -ster in youngster, tapster, huckster, etc.).

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
Glocke [clock] bell	Glöckner bellman, sexton.
Rede speech, talk	Redner orator.
Schaf sheep	Schäfer shepherd.
Schiff ship	Schiffer captain of a ship, skipper.
Schuh shoe	Schuster cobbler.

5.—-in.

By adding -in, we change a Masculine Noun into a *Feminine*: as *Graf* count, *Gräfin* countess; *Schuster* cobbler (a man), *Schusterin* cobbler (a woman).

ENGL. EQUIV.:—-ess, -ine.

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
Freund	(male) friend
Fuchs	fox
Held	hero
Jude	Jew
Koch	(man) cook
König	king
Löwe	lion
Markgraf	margrave
Nachbar	(male) neighbour
Schäfer	shepherd
Wolf	wolf
Freundin	(female) friend.
Füchsin	vixen, she-fox.
Heldin	heroine.
Jüdin	Jewess.
Köchin	(woman) cook.
Königin	queen.
Löwin	lioness.
Markgräfin	margravine.
Nachbarin	(female) neighbour.
Schäferin	shepherdess.
Wölfin	she-wolf.

6.—-schaft, -thum.

These, added to Nouns, form *Abstract* and *Collective* nouns.

-schaft, from schaffen [shape] to make or do, corresponds to our -ship, as in *Freund-schaft* friendship; and -thum to -dom, as in *Heiden-thum* heathendom.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—-ship, -dom, -age, -hood, -ity, etc.

a.—*Abstractive*.

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
Bekannte	(an) acquaintance

(with a person).

From	Comes the Derivative Noun
Bruder brother	Brüderschaft the relationship of brothers, brotherhood.
Bürge surety	Bürgschaft suretyship.
Christ (a) Christian	Christenthum Christianity.
Erbe heir	Erbschaft heirship, heirdom, heritage.
Feind foe, enemy	Feindschaft enmity.
Freund friend	Freundschaft friendship.
Gesell companion, fellow	Gesellschaft company, fellowship.
Heide heathen	Heidenthum heathenism.
heilig holy	Heiligtum [halidom] sanctuary.
Jude Jew	Judenthum Judaism.
Knecht [knight] vassal, bondsman, thrall, slave	Knechtschaft vassalage, bondage, thraldom, slavery.
Nachbar neighbour	Nachbarschaft neighbourhood.
reich rich	Reichthum riches.
Ritter knight	Ritterschaft, Ritterthum knighthood, chivalry.
wissen to wit, know	Wissenschaft science.

b.—Collective.

Bekannte (an) acquaintance	Bekanntschaft all (one's) acquaintance or friends.
Bruder brother	Brüderschaft (a) brotherhood, a company of brethren.
Gesell companion	Gesellschaft a company, a society.
Heide heathen	Heidenthum the whole body of heathens, heathendom.

From		Comes the Derivative Noun
Jude	Jew	Jüdenſchaft the body of Jews, Jewry.
Priester	priest	Priesterſchaft the priesthood or clergy.
Ritter	knight	Ritterſchaft a body of knights, a chivalry.
Sipp	sib, kinsman	Sippſchaft [Scotch <i>sept</i>] kin- dred, clan.

ADJECTIVE-SUFFIXES.

An Adjective-Suffix is a syllable which, if placed after any word, forms a *Derivative Adjective*.

We cannot read such words as “active, passive, offensive, defensive, conservative, destructive,” without feeling that the syllable *-ive* has changed the Latin verbs *act-*, *pass-*, etc., into Adjectives: *-ive* is therefore an Adjective-Suffix.

Examples of English Adjectives formed by Suffix:—

1.	2.	3.
wood-en	troubl-ous	singul-ar
wood-ed	tim-id.	tempor-ary.
wood-y	destruct-ive	greg-arious
cheer-ful	indestruct-ible	asin-ine.
cheer-less	eat-able	hum-an, hum-ane
woman-ly	satisfact-ory	angel-ic
woman-ish	fortun-ate	Rom-an-ic
Scot-ch	roy-al, re-al	Angl-ic-an
trouble-some	civ-il, serv-ile	diabol-ic-al

The added syllables *-en*, *-ed*, *-y*, *-ful*, etc., are all Adjective-Suffixes. Those in column 1 are purely English; those in the other two columns are taken from the Latin.

7.—*-bar.*

Connected with the old word *bären* to bear.

a.—Bearing, Producing.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-ful*, *-ous*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Dank	thanks	dankbar	thankful.
Frucht	fruit	fruchtbar	fruitful.
Furcht	fright, fear	furchtbar	fearful, frightful.
Gast	guest (Lat. <i>hospit-</i>)	gastbar	hospitable.
Wunder	wonder	wunderbar	wonderful, wondrous.
sondern	to sunder, sever, separate	sonderbar	singular, odd, peculiar.

b.—What will bear doing; what can be done.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-able*, *-ible*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective	
essen	to eat	essbar	eatable.
sehen	to see	sichtbar	visible.
trinken	to drink	trinkbar	drinkable.

8.—*-en*, *-ern.*

This Suffix shews the *Material* which anything is made of.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-en*.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective
Blei	lead	bleiern leaden.
Eiche	oak	eichen oaken.
Eisen	iron	eisern (made of) iron.
Erde	earth	irden earthen.
Gold	gold	golden golden.
Haar	hair	hären (made of) hair.
Holz	wood	hölzern wooden.
Seide	silk	seiden silken.
Wolle	wool.	wollen woollen.

See "N.B., Comparison of *-en* (or *-ern*), *-icht*, *-ig*," page 94.

9.—*-haft*.

From haben to have; hence it means *Having*, *Full of*: as Herz heart, herzhäft having heart or courage, courageous. Sometimes it means *Like*, *Resembling*, *Having the Qualities of*.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-ful*, *-ous*, *-ly*, *-ish*, etc.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective
Fieber	fever	fieberhaft feverish.
Herz	heart	herzhäft stouthearted, courageous.
leben	to live	lebhaft lively.
Mann	man	mannhaft manful, manly.
Sünde	sin	fündhaft sinful.
wahr [Lat. <i>ver-us</i>] true		wahrhaft veracious, truthful, true.

10.—*-icht*.

Resembling in shape, colour, texture, taste, etc.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
Haar	haaricht resembling hair.
Holz	holzicht „ wood.
Kupfer	kupfericht „ copper.
Wolle	wollicht „ wool.

(See “N.B., Comparison of -en (or -ern), -icht, -ig,” page 94.)

11.—-ig.

Corresponding to the Engl. -y [see Ch. 10, b]: it means *Possessing, Abounding in, Full of*.

In Compound words it may be translated by -ed: as *langhaarig* long-haired.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—-y, -ful, -ous, -ed.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
Bedacht	bedächtig deliberate, cautious, thoughtful.
blau blue, Auge eye	blauäugig blue-eyed.
Blume [bloom] flower	blumig flowery.
Blut blood	blutig bloody.
Durst thirst	durstig thirsty.
ein one, Falte fold	einfältig simple [Lat. <i>simpli-</i> single-fold], silly.
Freude joy	freudig joyful, joyous.
Geschwätz babble	geschwäztig full of babble, babbling.
Gewalt power, force	gewaltig forcible, powerful.
Gnade grace	gnädig gracious.
Grimm wrath, fury	grimmig wrathful, furious.
Haar hair	haarig hairy; langhaarig longhaired.

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective
Häft [from haben] grasp, seizure, arrest		heftig violent, vehement.
Heil [heal] health, wholeness		heilig holy.
Herz heart		herzig hearted (<i>as barmherzig</i> tender-hearted); also darling, sweet.
Jahr year		jährig a year old.
Kunde [ken] knowledge, skill		kundig [cunning, <i>canny</i>] acquainted, skilled; waffenkundig weapon-skilled, skillful in arms.
Kupfer copper		kupferig abounding in copper.
Leben life		lebendig* (having life), alive.
Lust [lust] pleasure		lustig merry [Old English <i>lusty</i> :— “The month of lusty May, when every lusty heart, etc.”— <i>Prince Arthur.</i>]
Macht might		mächtig mighty.
Mann man		(mannig) manch many.
Muth [mood] heart, courage		muthig courageous, brave.
Nöse nose		rösig rosy.
Ruhe, peace, rest		ruhig peaceful, quiet.
Sand sand		sandig sandy.
Schmutz [smut] dirt		schmutzig smutty, dirty.
Schnee snow		schneig snowy.
Schuld [should] debt, guilt		schuldig indebted, guilty.

* As the Root ends in en, a D has crept in before the Suffix.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective	
Stätte	stead, place	stätig steady.
That	deed, act	thätig deedful, active.
Trauer	[drear] grief, mourning	traurig [dreary] mournful, sad.
Unterthan	[under-done, put under] a subject	unterthänig subjected, subject.
Wucht, Ge-wicht	weight	wichtig weighty, important.
Wille	will	willig having a will, willing.
Würde	worth	würdig worthy.
Zorn	anger	zornig angry.

N.B.—Comparison of -en (or -ern), -icht, -ig.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. A copper kettle is | kupfer-n | made of copper. |
| 2. A thundery sky is | kupfer-icht | resembling „ |
| 3. A mountain may be | kupfer-ig | abounding in „ |

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------|----------------|
| 1. A deal table is | holz-ern | made of wood. |
| 2. A hard cabbage is | holz-icht | resembling „ |
| 3. A district may be | holz-ig | abounding in „ |

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------|----------------|
| 1. The Baptist's garment was | haar-en | made of hair. |
| 2. A fine wire is | haar-icht | resembling „ |
| 3. Esau's hands were | haar-ig | abounding in „ |

* So Coleridge, in the "Ancient Mariner":—

"All in a hot and copper sky,
The bloody sun at noon
Right up above the mast did stand,
No bigger than the moon."

A German would have said kupfer-icht.

12.—*-ish.*

Belonging to a region, race or class. — Sometimes used in Contempt, like our -ish in childish, womanish, outlandish.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-ish, -ic, -an, -ly.*

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
Ausland	outland, foreign land
Bube	boy, knave, rogue
Dieb	thief
Engel	angel
Angeln	Angles
gigant-	Latin for giant
Grieche	a Greek
Heide	a heathen
Herr	lord
Himmel	heaven
Hölle	hell
Erde	earth
Kind	child
Mann	a man.
Röme	Rome
Russe	Russ
Schotte	Scot
Old Germ.	thiuda, diot, diet, people
Türke	Turk
Weib	wife, woman
	ausländisch [outlandish] foreign.
	bülbisch knavish, roguish.
	diebis ch thievish.
	englisch angelic.
	Englis ch English.
	gigantis ch gigantic.
	griechisch Grecian, Greek.
	heidnis ch heathenish.
	herrisch lordly, imperious.
	himmlisch heavenly.
	höllisch hellish.
	irdisch earthly.
	kindisch childish.
	(männisch) whence the Noun Mensch man, human being.
	römis ch Romish, Roman.
	russisch Russian.
	schottisch Scottish, Scotch.
	(deutisch), deutsch [Dutch] the people's language, German.
	türkisch Turkish.
	weibisch womanish.

(See “N.B.—Comparison of *-ish* and *-isch*,” page 98.)

13.—*-lich.*

Corresponding to the English *like* and *-ly*. (See Ch. 9, *a.*)

a.—Likeness.

Added to Nouns, it means *Like*: as, *Freund* friend, *freundlich* friendlike, friendly. — But when added to Adjectives, it has the same force as our *-ish*, meaning *Somewhat*: as, *grau* gray, *gräulich* grayish.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-ly*, *like*; *-ish*.

		From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
alt	old		älstlich elderly, oldish.
braun	brown		bräunlich brownish.
Ende	end		endlich final, finite; unendlich endless, infinite.
Freund	friend		freundlich friendly.
Friede	peace		friedlich peaceful.
froh	glad		fröhlich [frolic] gladsome.
gelb	yellow		gelblich yellowish.
Glück	luck, good hap		glücklich lucky, happy.
grau	gray		gräulich grayish, grizzled.
Herr	lord		herrlich lordly, glorious.
Kind	child		kindlich childlike.
König	king		königlich kingly, royal.
Mann	a man (<i>vir</i>)		männlich manly, masculine.
Mensch	man (<i>homo</i>)		menschlich human, humane.
Nacht	night		nächtlich nightly.
offen	open		öffentliche* public.
Orden	order		ordentlich* orderly, regular.
reich	rich		reichlich [rich-like] copious.
sauer	sour		säuerlich sourish.

* When the Root ends in *en*, a *T* creeps in before the Suffix.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
so	(so=lich), <i>solch</i> [so-like] such.
süß	<i>süßlich</i> sweetish.
Tag	<i>täglich</i> daily.
Weib	<i>weiblich</i> [wife-like] womanly, feminine.
wo	(wo=lich), <i>welch</i> [what-like, Scot. <i>whilk</i>] which.
Welt	<i>weltlich</i> worldly.

b.—Ability or Possibility.

Added to Verbs, -lich means that which *Can do* (something), or *Can have* (something) *done to it*: as, sterben [starve] to die, *sterblich* that can die, mortal; glauben to believe, *glaublich* that can be believed, credible.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-able, ible, -ile.*

glauben to believe, credit	<i>glaublich</i> believable, credible.
grauen, grausen to cause horror	<i>gräulich</i> , <i>grauslich</i> horrible, grizzly.
hassen to hate	<i>häßlich</i> [hate-able] hateful, ugly.
kennen to know	<i>kenntlich</i> * knowable.
lieben to love	<i>lieblich</i> lovable, lovely.
sterben [starve] to die	<i>sterblich</i> mortal; <i>unsterblich</i> immortal.
beschreiben to describe	<i>un-beschreiblich</i> in-describable.
widerstehen to resist	<i>unwiderstehlich</i> irresistible.
vergehen to perish	<i>vergänglich</i> perishable.
wirken to work, act	<i>wirklich</i> actual, real.
zerbrechen to break in pieces	<i>zerbrechlich</i> fragile [from Latin <i>frag-</i> to break].

* See Note, page 96.

N. B.—Comparison of -isch and -lich.

Sometimes *-isch*, like our *-ish*, implies something Odious or Contemptible.

(Compare:—“papal & popish, Roman & Romish, childlike & childish,” etc. etc.)

From	Are derived	
	with a good meaning:	with a bad meaning:
Herr lord	herrlich lordly, glorious	herrisch imperious, domineering.
Kind child	kindlich childlike	kindisch childish.
Weib wife, woman	weiblich womanly, feminine	weibisch womanish, effeminate.

14.—los.

los loose is itself an Adjective. When added to Nouns, it means *Free from, Without*; and so corresponds to our *-less*; as *raſtlos* restless, without rest.

It is often opposed to *-bar*, *-ig*, or *-voll* (full); thus *fruchtbar* fruitful, *fruchtlos* fruitless; *Freude* joy, *freudvoll* and *freudig* joyful, *freudenlos* joyless.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-less*.

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
Acht heed	achtlos heedless, careless.
Freude joy	freudenlos joyless, cheerless.
Frucht fruit	fruchtlos fruitless, useless.
Furcht fear	furchtlos fearless, dauntless.
Gedanke [from denken to think] thought	gedankenlos void of thought, thoughtless.
Raſt rest	raſtlos restless.
Schlaf sleep	ſchlaſflos sleepless.
Trost comfort, consolation.	troſtlos comfortless, inconsolable.

15.—*-sam.*

Connected with *same*, and corresponding to the Engl. Suffix *-some*; so that *burdensome* means being the *same* as a burden. Notice, that while *friedlich* is simply peaceful, *friedsam* is *inclined to* peace, peaceable, pacific.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*-some, -ful.*

a.—*Like.*

From		Comes the Derivative Adjective
ein	one	einsam alone [<i>that is, all-one</i>] lonesome, lonely.
genug	enough	genügsam [enough-some] contented.
selten	seldom, rare	seltsam rare, strange, odd.
gerecht	right, just	gerechtsam rightful, lawful.

b.—*Liking, Apt to.*

arbeiten	to labour	arbeitsam laborious, industrious.
Friede	peace	friedsam peaceable.
Furcht	fright, fear	furchtsam [fearsome] fearful, timid.
gehören	to hearken, obey	gehorsam obedient.
heilen	to heal, make whole	heilsam wholesome.
Mühe	toil, trouble	mühsam toilsome, troublesome; also, painstaking.
sparen	to spare	sparsam sparing, economical.
wachen	to wake, watch	wachsam wakeful, watchful.

16.—*-voll.*

Voll full is itself an Adjective. As a Suffix, it is added to Nouns, like our *-ful* in beautiful, &c. — It often takes *s* or *n* before it.

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*full of, -ful.*

From	Comes the Derivative Adjective
Anmuth grace, charm	anmuthsvoll charming, engaging.
Freude joy	freudevoll joyful.
Früchte fruits	früchtevoll full of fruits.
Gedanke [from denken to think] thought	gedankenvoll full of thoughts, pensive.
Kummer [cumber] sorrow	kummervoll sorrowful.

VERB-SUFFIXES.

A Verb-Suffix is a syllable or letter, which, if placed after the root of any word, makes a *Derivative Verb*.

Suffixes play an important part in the formation of English Verbs. For the English Suffixes *-ate*, *-fy*, *-ize*, *-en*, see under “Verb-Prefixes *N.B.*,” page 40.

Specimen of English Verbs formed by Suffixes.

By the Suffix *-le*.

From the Nouns *hand*, etc.: to handle, sparkle, curdle, muddle, muffle, gamble, throttle, strangle.

From the Adjectives *fond*, *rough*: to fondle, ruffle.

From the Verbs *drag*, etc.: to draggle, settle, waddle, hobble, whistle (whizz), swaddle (swathe).

By the Suffix *-er*.

From the Nouns *mouth*, *wave*, *shield*: to mutter, waver, shelter.

From the Adverbs *behind*, *long*, *out*: to hinder, linger, utter.

From the Verbs *beat*, *hang*, *slop*: to batter, hanker, slobber.

The German Verb-Suffixes are few and not very important. We here select four of them: -el (or -er), -ig, -ir, and -z.

17.—-el-, -er-.

a.—*Diminutive* (especially -el-).

ENGL. EQUIV.:—*often, -le, -er.*

Doing an action *in a small way*, or *a number of times* in succession. — Often implying *Contempt*.

From		Comes the Derivative Verb		
alt	old	ältern	be getting	elderly or oldish.
Auge	eye	ängeln	to ogle.	
bitten	to ask	betteln	beg; whence	
beten	to pray	Bettler	beggar.	
fachen	to blow (as with bellows)	fächeln	to fan.	
falten	to fold	fälteln	gather in small folds, crimp, pucker, rumple.	
flott	floating, afloat	flattern	flutter.	
Frost	frost	flüstern	whisper.	
Hand	hand	frösten	chill; mich fröstest I feel chilly.	
flingen	to sound, ring	handeln	keep putting the hand to, handle, treat, trade.	
lachen	to laugh	flingen	tinkle, ring (a small bell).	
lieben	to love	lächeln	smile.	
		liebeln	play at loving, flirt.	

From	Comes the Derivative Verb
(Old Germ. <i>riesen</i>)	<i>rieseln</i> drizzle, trickle, gurgle.
<i>säusen</i> to whizz, roar	<i>säuseln</i> whistle, rustle.
Root conn. with <i>scheinen</i> shine, seem, sham	<i>schimmern</i> glitter, glimmer.
<i>schlafen</i> to sleep	<i>schläfern</i> be sleepy.
Root conn. with <i>smite</i>	<i>schmettern</i> [smaller] rattle, quaver, trill; flutter.
<i>schütten</i> to shed or shoot (as rubbish)	<i>schütteln</i> and <i>erschütteln</i> [shudder] shake.
Root conn. with <i>spitzen</i> , spirt, spread, spray	<i>sprudeln</i> [spirtle] sputter, bubble.
<i>streichen</i> to strike in passing, graze	<i>streicheln</i> stroke (caressingly).
<i>tropfen</i> , <i>triefen</i> to drop, drip	<i>tröpfeln</i> dribble, trickle.
<i>wiegen</i> to wag, swag, sway (to and fro)	<i>wackeln</i> waggle, wag (one's head).
Root conn. with <i>waten</i> to wade, Lat. <i>vad-</i> , &c.	<i>wedeln</i> [waddle] wag (one's tail).
<i>Witz</i> wit	<i>witzen</i> affect wit.
<i>ziehen</i> , <i>zog</i> [tow, tug] to draw	<i>zögern</i> (draw-l), linger, dawdle, delay, tarry.

b.—*Making* (especially *-er-*).

<i>neu</i> new	<i>erneuern</i> make new, renew.
<i>Folge</i> [follow] consequence, inference	<i>folgern</i> draw an inference.
<i>Rauch</i> [reek] smoke	<i>räuchern</i> fumigate, perfume.
<i>steigen</i> to mount, rise	<i>steigern</i> make higher, raise.
<i>Wurf</i> a throw, cast (of dice, etc.).	<i>würfeln</i> make a throw or cast, play at dice.

18.—*-ig-*, (*added after b, t, l, n.*)ENGL. EQUIV.:—*Making, Doing; -fy, -ish.*

From	Comes the Derivative Verb
schweigen to be silent, hold one's peace	beschwichtigen make silent, pacify.
Ende end	endigen to end, finish.
Pein pain, torment	peinigen to torment.
rein pure	reinigen purify.
Sünde sin	fündigen to sin, commit sin.

19.—*-ir-*.

Making, Doing [borrowed from the French *-ir* as in *venir*, etc., and added chiefly to Foreign or Technical words].

From	Comes the Derivative Verb
Latin <i>divid-</i>	dividiren divide.
French <i>friser</i>	frisiren frizzle, curl, dress (hair).
French <i>génér</i>	(sich) geniren be ill at ease.
halb half	halbiren halve.
Latin <i>invent-us</i> found	inventiren make an inventory (or list of things found).
French <i>marcher</i>	marschiren march.
Latin <i>multiplic-</i> , manifold	multipliciren multiply.
Profit profit	profitiren profit, make profit.
Latin <i>reg-</i>	regiren, regieren rule.
Schattē shadow	schattiren shade (a picture).
Latin <i>stude-</i>	studiren study.

20.—ং.

S a y i n g.

From	Comes the Derivative Verb
ach! ah, alas!	ächzen groan, moan.
Du thou	duzen “thee and thou” each other, talk famili- arly.
juch! juchhei! hurra!	juchzen, jauchzen shout for joy.
Schluck gulp	schluchzen sob.

PART III.

Interlineal Translation and Notes.

Der Erlkönig, [see Ch. 17].

THE ERL-KING.

Wer reitet^a so spät durch Nacht und Wind?
Who rideth so late through night and wind?

Es ist der Vater mit seinem Kind^b;
It is the father with his child;

Er hat den Knaben^c wohl in dem^d Armt,
He has the boy safe [well] in the arm,

Er fasst ihn sicher, er hält ihn warm.
He grasps him safely [secure], he holds him warm.

Mein Sohn, was^e birgst du so bang dein
My son, why hidest [buriest] thou so anxiously thy
Gesicht?
face?

^areiten: means to ride on the back of an animal (see Ch. 2); to ride in a carriage is fahren.

^bKind: conn. with the English *kind*, *kindred*, *kinsman*, *akin*, etc.

^cKnabe: conn. with *knave*; see Ch. 13. Chaucer says, Griselda had first "a maiden child", and then "a knave child", that is, a boy. But *knave* has now come to have a bad meaning: so the German *Bube* (*boy*) has suffered a partial degradation, and often means a knave.

^din dem: *in the*, meaning "*in his*."

^ewas: really means *what* (see Ch. 4, b); hence also *what-for*, *wherefore*, *why*.

^fGesicht: properly means *sight* (see Pr. 44, b; and Ch. 9, b); but the most expressive feature, the Eye, is used for the whole countenance. So *visage* comes from the Latin *videre* to see.

Siehst, Vater, du den Erlkönig nicht?
 Seest, father, thou the Erl-King not?
 Den Erlkönig mit Krön' und Schweif^g?
 The Erl-King with crown and tail?
 Mein Sohn, es ist ein Nebelstreif^h.
 My son, it is a streak of fog.

"Du liebes Kind, komm geh mit mir!
 "Thou dear child, come go with me!
 "Gar schöne Spiele spel' ich mit dir;
 "Very beautiful games play I with thee;
 "Manch' hunte Blumen sind an dem Strand,
 "Many gay flowers [blooms] are on the river-side,
 "Meine Mutter hat manch güldenⁱ Gewand."
 "My mother has many (a) golden garment."

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und hörest du nicht
 My father, my father, and hearest thou not
 Was Erlenkönig mir leise verspricht^k?
 What Erl-King to-me softly promises?
 Sej ruhig^l, bleibe ruhig, mein Kind,
 Be at-rest, keep quiet, my child,
 In dürren Blättern^m säuseltⁿ der Wind.
 In dry leaves rustles the wind.

^g Schweif: see Ch. 6, *d*; and 12.

^h Nebelstreif: a compound Noun, from Nebel [nebula] fog, and Streif a stripe, strip, or streak; see Ch. 12.

ⁱ gülden: is an old and poetic word, the common word is golden.

^j Gewand: from winden to wind (see Pr. 44, *b*); Gewand, therefore, means something wound round the body, like a Scotch plaid or Roman toga; hence also any garment.

^k verspricht: from sprechen (see Ch. 9, *a*) to speak; versprechen [for-speak], to speak away from yourself to another, to promise; see Pr. 10, *a*.

^l ruhig: see Suf. 11.

^m Blättern: from Blatt; see Ch. 2.

ⁿ säuselt: from sausen to make a great noise; säuseln to make a little noise; see Suf. 17, *a*.

"Willst, feiner Knabe, du mit mir gehn?
 "Wilt, sweet [fine] boy, thou with me go?
 "Meine Töchter sollen^o dich warten^p schön;
 "My daughters shall thee tend beautifully;
 "Meine Töchter führen^q den nächtlichen^r Reihn^s,
 "My daughters lead the nightly dance,
 Und wiegen und tanzen und singen dich ein^t."
 "And rock and dance and sing thee to-sleep."

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und siehst du nicht dort
 My father, my father, and seest thou not there
 Erlkönig's Töchter am^u düstern Ort?
 Erl-King's daughters on-the gloomy spot?
 Mein Sohn, mein Sohn, ich seh' es genau,
 My son, my son, I see it exactly,
 Es^v scheinen die alten Weiden^w so grau.
 There shine the old willows so gray.

"Ich liebe dich, mich reizt deine schöne Gestalt^x;
 "I love thee, me charms thy beautiful form;

^ofönnen: conn. with *shall* and *should*, which originally expressed debt or duty (what is due); so we say "You *should* do so," meaning "You *ought* (that is, you *owe*) to do so."

^pwarten: [conn. with *ward*, *guard*, etc.] means, to *wait*, *wait upon*, tend, attend, or nurse. Compare the *ward* of a hospital.

^qführen: conn. with *fahren* to drive; also with the English *fare*, *farewell*, *thoroughfare*, *ferry*, etc., and the Lat. *ferre*.

^rnächtlichen: from *nächtlich*; see Suf. 13, *a*. For *Nacht*, see Ch. 9, *b*.

^sReihen: conn. with *Reihe* a *row* (see Ch. 18, *b*, and 10, *a*); hence *Reihen* or *Reigen* a circular row (of dancers), a dance.

^tein: read through the Pr. 21, *b*.

^uam: contr. from *an dem on the*.

^ves: when the Nominative comes after the Verb, *es* (*it*) is often put at the beginning of the sentence, like the English *there*: as, "There lived a king," instead of "A king lived."

^wWeiden: from *Weibe*; see Ch. 1, *a*.

^xGestalt: see Pr. 44, *b*.

„Und bist du nicht willig^y, so brauch ich Gewalt^z.“
 “And art thou not willing, then use I force.”
 Mein Vater, mein Vater, jetzt faßt^{aa} er mich an^{aa}!
 My father, my father, now grasps he me —!
 Erßkönig hat mir ein Leids gethan!
 Erl-King has to-me a harm done!

Dem Vater grauset's^{ab}, er reitet geschwind^{ac},
 The father shudders, he rides swiftly,
 Er hält in den^d Armen das ächzende^{ad} Kind,
 He holds in the arms the groaning child,
 Erreicht^{ae} den Hof mit Müh und Noth^{af};
 Reaches the yard with toil and distress[need];
 In seinen Armen das Kind war todt^{ar}.
 In his arms the child was dead.

GOETHE.

^y willig: see Suf. 11.^z Gewalt: (see Pr. 44, b), from walten [conn. with *wield*], to rule. In the Saxon Heptarchy, the chief king was called *Bretwalda*, meaning *wielder* or ruler of *Britain*, or, as some think, *Broad-wielder*.^{ab} dem Vater grauset es: for es grauset dem Vater it horrifies the father.^{ac} geschwind: see Pr. 48.^{ad} ächzende: agh! [conn. with the Engl. *ache*] means *ah! oh! alas!* — hence ächzen is to keep calling out “agh!”, to groan or moan; see Suf. 20.^{ae} erreicht: from erreichen, see Pr. 4, a.^{af} Noth and todt: see Ch. 2 and 16, c.

Der Pilgrim^a.
THE PILGRIM.

Noch in meines Lebense ^bLenze^b
Yet in my life's spring-time
War ich, und ich wanderte aus^c;
Was I, and I wandered out;
Und der Jugend frohe Tänze
And — youth's glad dances
Ließ ich in des Vaters^d Haus.
Left I in the father's house.

All mein Erbtheil, meine Habe^e
All my inheritance, my property [*having*]
warf ich fröhlich^f glaubend hin,
Threw I gladly believing away,
Und am^h leichten Pilgerstäbeⁱ
And on-the light pilgrim-staff
Zog^j ich fort^j mit Kindersinn^k.
Travelled I forth with childlike-mind.

^a Pilgrim: from the Lat. *per-egr-inus*, one who goes over land (*per agrum*), a traveller.

^b Lenze: from which comes our *Lent*, because it falls in spring time, see Ch. 4, *a*.

^c wanderte aus: from *auswandern*; see Pr. 17, *a*.

^d des Vaters: *the father's*, meaning "*my father's*." — For *Vater*, see Ch. 1, *b*.

^e Leben and Habe: see Ch. 13.

^f warf and hin: from *hinwerfen*; see Pr. 29. For *werfen*, see Ch. 17 and 12.

^g fröhlich: conn. with *frolic*; from *froh*, glad, see Suf. 13, *a*.

^h am: contr. from *an dem*, *on the*, meaning "*on my*."

ⁱ Pilgerstab: a compound noun, from *Pilger*, *pilgrim*, and *Stab*, see Ch. 13.

^j zog and fort: from *fortziehen*; see Pr. 24, *a*.

^k Kindersinn: a compound noun, from *Kind*, *child* (see Note ^b to "The Erlking"), and *Sinn*, *sense* or *mind*.

Denn mich trieb¹ ein mächtig^m Hoffenⁿ
 For (because) me drove a mighty hope
 Und ein dunkles Glaubenswort^o;
 And a dim word-of-faith;
 Wandle^p, rief's^y, — der Weg^q ist offen^r —
 Wander, cried it, — the way is open —
 Immer^s nach dem Aufgang^t fort^p.
 Ever towards the East on[forth].

Bis zu einer goldnen Pforten
 Till to a golden portal
 Du gelangst^u, da gehst^v du ein^w;
 Thou gettest, there goest thou in;
 Denn das Irdische^x wird dorten
 For the Earthly will there
 Himmelsch^y, unvergänglich^z sehn.
 Heavenly, imperishable be.

¹trieb (see Ch. 18, c): from treiben; see Ch. 2 and 13.

^mmächtig: see Suf. 11; derived from mögen, may; see Ch. 9, b.

ⁿein Hoffen: a hoping; the Infinitive of the Verb hoffen (see Ch. 12), is here used as a Noun instead of eine Hoffnung, a hope. When the Germans want to use the Verb as a Noun, they take the Infinitive, as das Singen, das Tanzen, for "the singing, the dancing."

^oGlaubenswort: a compound of Glauben, belief [from ge-lauben, conn. with be-lieve], and Wort, word (see Ch. 2); hence, Glaubenswort, belief's word.

^pwandle and fort: from fortwandeln; see Pr. 24, b.

^qWeg: see Ch. 10, b.

^roffen: see Ch. 12.

^sAufgang: literally, the up-going (of the sun); hence, the East; from aufgehen, to go up; see Pr. 16, a.

^tgelangst: gelangen (see Pr. 5) comes from lang, long; langen, to long for.

^ugehst and ein: from eingehen; see Pr. 21, a.

^virdisch: (see Suf. 12); from Erde, earth; see Ch. 1, a.

^whimmlisch: (see Suf. 12); from Himmel, heaven.

^xunvergänglich: from gehen, to go, see Ch. 18, a; vergehen [forgo], to pass away, perish, see Pr. 10, a; vergangen, bygone, perished: vergänglich, perishable, see Suf. 13, b; unvergänglich, imperishable, see Pr. 49.

Abend ward's^y und wurde Morgen,
 Evening grew it, and grew morning,
 Rimmer^z, nimmer stand ich still;
 Never, never stood I still;
 Aber immer^z blieb's verborgen^{aa}
 But ever remained-it hidden
 Was ich suche, was ich will.
 What I seek, what I wish [will].

Berge lagen mir im Wege^{ab},
 Mountains lay to-me in-the way,
 Ströme hemmten meinen Fuß;
 Rivers [streams] barred [hemmed-in] my foot;
 Ueber Schlünde baut' ich Stege,
 Over gulfs built I paths,
 Brücken^{ac} durch^{ad} den wilden Fluß^{ae}.
 Bridges across the wild river.

Und zu eines Stroms^{af} Gestaden^{ag}
 And to a river's banks

^yrief's: for rief es.—Ward's: for ward es, which is the same as wurde es, from werden, to become.

^zimmer, contr. from je mehr [aye-more], evermore; and nimmer, from nie mehr, never more.

^{aa}verborgen: from verbergen; see Pr. 10, a. We have here a whole family of words, both English and German:—bergen, [bury], to hide, to shelter; see Ch. 10, b; Burg, fortress; burgh, borough, bury, as in Edinburgh, Peterborough, Canterbury; Bürger, one living in a fort or town (once all towns were fortified), a burgher, burgess or citizen; Bürger, a surety; borgen, to borrow; etc. etc.

^{ab}mir im Wege: to-me in-the way, meaning "in my way." Im: contr. from in dem.

^{ac}Brücken: from Brücke; see Ch. 8.

^{ad}durch: through; see Ch. 1, a, and 9, b.

^{ae}Fluß: from fließen, to flow [Lat. flu-], are derived: Fluss [Lat. fluvius, French fleuve], a river; Fluth, a flood; Flotte, a fleet; afloat, etc. With fließen are also connected: fliegen, to fly; Fliege, a fly; fliehen, to flee; Floh, a flea; Flug and Flucht, flight; Flügel, a wing, etc.

^{af}Strom and groß: see Ch. 16, c.

^{ag}Gestade: see Pr. 44, b.

Kam ich, der nach Morgen^{ah} floß;
 Came I, that towards the East flowed;
 Froh vertrauend^{ai} seinem Faden [Ch. 14, a],
 Gladly trusting to his thread,
 Warf ich mich in seinen Schoß.
 Threw I myself into his lap.

Hin^{aj} zu einem großen^{af} Meere
 Along to a great sea [mere, Lat. *mare*]
 Trieb^{aj} mich seiner Wellen^{ak} Spiel;
 Drove me his waves' play;
 Vor mir liegt's in weiter Leere [see Suf. 2],
 Before me lies it in wide emptiness,
 Näher bin ich nicht dem Ziel.
 Nigher am I not to-the goal.

Ach, kein Steg will dahin^{al} führen!
 Alas, no path will thither lead!
 Ach, der Himmel über mir
 Alas, the Heaven above [over] me
 Will die Erde nie berühren^{am},
 Will the earth never touch,
 Und das Dort ist niemals^{an} hier.
 And the Yonder [there] is never here.

SCHILLER.

^{ah} Morgen: means *morning* (see Ch. 10, b); hence, the East.

^{ai} vertrauend: from *vertrauen*; see Pr. 10, c.

^{aj} hin and trieb: from *hinstreiben*; see Pr. 29.

^{ak} seiner Wellen Spiel: his waves' play, for "the play of his waves." The Genitive is put first: this is a favourite construction with Schiller.

^{al} dahin: from *da*, *there*, and *hin*, *hence*, away. See Diagram, p. 67.

^{am} berühren: see Pr. 1.

^{an} niemals: from *nie*, *never*, and *Mal*, time; hence, *niemals*, at no time. (*Mal* means time, in the same sense as the French *fois*).

Das Schloß^a am^b Meere^c.
THE CASTLE BY-THE SEA.

Hast du das Schloß gesehen,
Hast thou the Castle seen,
Das hohe Schloß am Meer?
The high Castle by-the sea?
Golden^d und rosig^e wehen^f
Golden and rosy come-wafting
Die Wolken drüber^g her^h
The clouds [welkin] over-it —.

Es möchteⁱ sich niederneigen^h
It would-fain (itself) stoop down
In die spiegelflare^j Fluth^j,
Into the mirror-clear flood,
Es möchte streben^k und steigen
It would-fain strive and mount

^a Schloß: from schließen to shut or lock; whence Schloß [*slot*, see Ch. 4, *b*], a lock; also, a locked or fortified place, castle; Schlüssel a close, con-clus-ion [Lat. *claus-* shut]; Schlüssel a key; Schleuse a sluice or water-lock, etc. etc.

^b am: contr. from an dem, on the.

^c Meer [Lat. *mare*, French *mer*]: conn. with *mere* in Windermere; with *marine*, *maritime*, etc.

^d golden and ^e rosig: see Suf. 8 and 11.

^f wehen and ^h her: from herwehen; see Pr. 26.

^g drüber: for darüber *there-over*; from darüber (see Ch. 1, *a*, and 16, *a*), and über, see Ch. 20 and 13.

ⁱ möchte: the Subjunctive from mögen *may*, also to like; hence, es möchte it might, or it would like to.

^h niederneigen: see Pr. 35.

^j spiegelflare: from Spiegel mirror, and flar clear. Spiegel comes from the Lat. *speculum*, just as Ziegel tile, from *tegulum*. The German späh, the Engl. *spy*, and the Lat. *spec* or *spic* (as in spectator, inspect, conspicuous, etc.), are all one root.

^k streben: see note ^{ae} to "The Pilgrim."

^l streben: see Ch. 13.

In der Abendwolken Gluth¹.
Into the evening-clouds' glow.

„Wohl hab' ich es gesehen,
“Truly [well] have I it seen,
Das hohe Schloß am Meer,
The high Castle by-the sea,
Und den Mond darüber stehen^m
And the moon there-over stand,
Und Nebel weit umher.“
And mists [nebulæ] far [wide] around.”

Der Wind und des Meeres Wallen,
The wind and the sea's motion [wallowing],
Gaben sie frischen Klang?
Gave they (a) lively [fresh] sound?
Bernahestⁿ Du aus hohen Hallen
Hearest thou out-of high halls
Saiten und Festgesang?
Harpstrings and festive-song?

„Die Winde, die Wogen alle
“The winds, the waves all
Lagen^p in tiefer Ruh;
Lay in deep repose;

¹der Abendwolken Gluth: “the glow of the evening clouds;” see Note ^{ak} to “The Pilgrim.” — Gluth a glow, from the Verb glühen to glow; see “N.B.” p. 74.

^mund den Mond darüber stehen: means “and (I saw) the moon stand over it.”

ⁿBernahest: from vernehmen; see Pr. 10, c. So our perceive, perception from the Latin *cap-*, *cep-* to take; also comprehend from Lat. *prehend-* to catch, and the French *comprendre* from *prendre*. The Scotch say “Ye're gleg at the uptake,” that is, quick to catch one's meaning.

^oFestgesang: from *Fest* feast, and *Gesang* song; see Pr. 44, b, and Ch. 15. — Saite is a string of any instrument.

^pLagen: from liegen, to lie; see Ch. 10, b.

Einem Klagesied^a aus der Halle
 To-a death-song out-of the hall
 Hört' ich mit Thränen zu.^r
 Listened I with tears —."

Sahest^w Du oben gehen
 Sawest thou above walking [*going*]
 Den König und sein Gemahl?
 The King and his Consort?
 Der rothen Mäntel Wehen?^s
 The red mantles' waving?
 Der goldnen Kronen Strahl?^t
 The golden crowns' radiance?

Führten sie nicht mit Wonne
 Led they not with delight
 Eine schöne Jungfrau^u dar [Pr. 19],
 A beautiful Maiden forth,
 Herrlich^v wie eine Sonne,
 Glorious as a sun,
 Strahlend^x im goldnen Haar?
 Radiant in-her golden hair?

"Wohl sah^y ich die Eltern^z beide^z
 "Truly [well] saw I the Parents [elders] both

^a Klagesied: from Klage wail, and Lied a lay or song; hence, Klagesied a lay of wail, a dirge.

^r hörte and zu: from zuhören; see Pr. 42.

^s der rothen — Strahl: "the waving of their red mantles, the radiance of their golden crowns;" see Note ^{ak} to "The Pilgrim."

^t Jungfrau: from jung, young, and Frau, lady.

^v herrlich: see Suf. 13, a.

^x strahlend: beaming, from strählen to beam or radiate; hence Strahl [streak, stream] a beam, or ray of light.

^w sah: see Ch. 10, a; from sehen to see.

^z Eltern: from alt old, see Ch. 2 and 15; älter older or elder.

^y beide: see Ch. 18, b, and 1, a.

Ohne der Kronen Licht,
Without the crowns' light,
Im schwarzen^a Trauerkleide^{an};
In-the black mourning-dress;
Die Jungfrau sah ich nicht.^b
The Maiden saw I not."

UHLAND.

Mignon^a.

Kennst^b Du das^c Land, wo die Citronen blühn^c,
Knowest thou the Land, where the citrons bloom,
Im^d dunkeln Laub die Goldorangen glühn^c,
In-the dark [dingy] foliage[leaf] the gold-oranges glow,
Ein sanfter Wind vom^d blauen Himmel weht,
A soft [Ch. 14, b] wind from-the blue heaven blows,
Die Myrthe^e still, und hoch der Lorbeer^e steht?
The myrtle still, and high the laurel stands?

^aschwarz: see Ch. 6, d, and 4, a.^{an}Trauerkleid: [dreary-clothes], from Trauer [drear, see Ch. 16, b] sadness, and Kleid clothing; see Ch. 18, b, and 1, a.

^aMignon is a beautiful character in Goethe's great work "*Wilhelm Meister*." Daughter of an Italian marquis, she has been kidnapped in early childhood, carried to Germany, and trained to be a rope-dancer. Wilhelm, seeing her brutally treated in a market-place, rescues her and adopts her as his own. In this song she utters, while in the cold North, her longing for the sunny South, the land of her birth; but only in vague terms, partly because her recollections are dim, and partly because her cruel master has made her swear not to reveal her origin.

^bfennst: from fennen [ken]; corresponding to the Lat. cognoscere, and French connaître, that is, to be acquainted with (so that you could recognize) a PERSON or THING; while wissen corresponds to the Lat. scire and French savoir, that is, to be aware of a FACT. Thus, "We know John (fennen); we know he is alive (wissen)."

^cblühen and glühen: see Ch. 20.

^dim and vom: for in dem and von dem.

^eMyrthe: from the Lat. *myrtus*. — Lorbeer: from the Lat. *laurus*, and Beere berry.

Kennst du es wohl?
Knowest thou it, I-wonder [well]?

Dahin^r, dahin
Thither, thither

Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Geliebter^s, ziehn^h.
Would I with thee, O my Beloved, travel.

Kennst du das Haus? Auf Säulen ruht sein Dachⁱ,
Knowest thou the House? On pillars rests its roof,
Es^j glänzt der Saal, es schimmert^k das Gemach;
There glitters the hall, there glimmers the chamber;
Und Marmorbilder^l stehn und sehn^m mich anⁿ:
And marble-figures stand and look-at me —:

„Was hat manⁿ dir, du armes Kind, gethan^o?“
“What have they to-thee, thou poor Child, done?”

Kennst du es wohl?
Knowest thou it, I-wonder?

Dahin, dahin
Thither, thither

^rdahin: see Diagram, page 67.

^sGeliebter: from lieben to love, see Ch. 18, c and 13; geliebt loved (for ge-, see Ch. 10, b); ein Geliebter a loved (one). — This is the Masculine Noun; the Feminine would be, eine Geliebte.

^hziehen: (whence zog, see note ^j to “The Pilgrim”); conn. with tow, tug, team, etc.; see Ch. 4, a, 18, c, and 10, b.

ⁱDach: conn. with bedecken to cover; the Engl. to deck, the deck of a ship, the thatch of a cottage; the Lat. teg-, tec-, whence protégé, protect, detect, etc.; see Ch. 1, a, and 8.

^jEs: see note ^v to “The Erlking.”

^kschimmert: from schimmen, see Suf. 17, a.

^lMarmorbilder: from Marmor (Lat. marmor) marble, and Bild image. — Bild comes from bilden to form or shape; conn. with build.

^msehn and an: from ansehen; see Pr. 15.

ⁿhat man: literally, “has one.” The German man corresponds to the French on (contr. from homme a man). It is often best translated by making the verb Passive; as, man sagt, French on dit, (one says), “it is said.”

^ogethan: from thun to do; see Ch. 2.

Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Beschützer^p, ziehn^h.
Would I with thee, O my Protector, travel.

Kennst Du den Berg^a und seinen Wolfensteg^r?
Knowest thou the Mountain and its cloudy path?
Das Maulthier^s sucht im^t Nebel seinen Weg^u;
The mule seeks in-the mist [nebula] his way;
In Höhlen^v wohnt der Drachen alte Brut;
In caverns dwells the dragons' old brood;
Es^j stürzt der Fels^w und über ihn die Fluth^x;
There tumbles the rock and over it the flood;
Kennst Du ihn wohl?
Knowest thou it, I-wonder?

Dahin, dahin
Thither, thither

Geht unser Weg^u! o Vater, laß uns ziehn^h!
Goes our way! O Father, let us travel!

GOETHE.

^p Beschützer: from schützen to shield or shelter [conn. with the Lat. *scutum* a shield, or *scutcheon*; Italian *scudo* a shield, also a Roman dollar, so called from the *escutcheon* stamped on it; Lat. *scuti-ger* shield-bearer, *squire* or *esquire*]; *beschäftigen* see Pr. 1; *Beschützer*, see Suf. 4, a. — For "Protector," see note ⁱ.

^a Berg: whence Eisberg iceberg, ice-mountain.

^r Wolfensteg: from Wolke cloud (see Ch. 16, c), and Steg a mountain-path, from steigen [Old Engl. *sty*] to mount; whence also *stile*, and *Stegreif* *sty-rope* or stirrup. In Yorkshire a ladder is called *stee*; and there is a mountain in Cumberland, called *The Stie*.

^s Maulthier: from the Lat. *mulus*, a mule, and *Thier* [deer; Greek *ther*, whence *megatherium* etc.] an animal. N.B. — Things that first came from the SOUTH, have often kept their LATIN names; as *Myrthe*, *Vorbeer*, *Marmor*, *Maulthier*, *Drache*.

^t sucht: from suchen; see Ch. 9, a.

^u Weg: see Ch. 10, b.

^v Höhle: a hole or cave, from *höhl* hollow; see Suf. 2.

^w Fels: conn. with *fell* (a mountain), as in "Seawfell," etc.

^x Fluth: see note ^{ae} to "The Pilgrim."

Ritter Toggenburg.
KNIGHT TOGGENBURG.

"Ritter," treue^b Schwesternliebe^c
"Knight! faithful [true] sister's-love

Widmet euch dies Herz^d.
Deyotes to-you this heart.

Fordert keine andere Liebe,
Demand no other [Ch. 14, b] love,

Denn es macht^e mir Schmerz^f.
For it gives [makes] to-me pain [smart].

Ruhig mag ich euch erscheinen^g,
Calmly may I you appear,

Ruhig gehen sehn^g.
Calmly go see.

Eurer Augen stilles Weinen^h
Your eyes' silent [still] weeping [whining]

^aRitter: from reiten to ride; see note ^a to "The Erl-king." — Many German Verbs have two roots, a WEAK and a STRONG one. The Weak root of reiten is reit, and from it we have Reiter rider, horse-soldier; the Strong root is ritt, whence Ritter [cavalier] knight. In the same way, from the Weak and Strong roots of schneiden to cut, we have Schneider tailor [French tailleur, from tailler to cut]; but Schnitter reaper. — Cavalier, Spanish caballero, Italian cavaliere, and French chevalier, all come from caballo, cavallo, or cheval (horse), and originally meant a horseman.

^btreu: conn. with true, truth, troth, *I trow*, trust, etc.; and with trauen (to trust, also be-troth or wed), Trost comfort, etc.

^cSchwesternliebe: from Schwestern, see Ch. 6, d; and Liebe, see Ch. 18, e, and 14.

^dHerz: see Ch. 17, and 4, a. — The sentence does not mean "love devotes this heart," but "this heart devotes love." The Objective case often comes first, and the Nominative last. So we have had "Spiele spiel' ich," and "mich reizt deine Gestalt."

^emacht: from machen; see Ch. 9, a.

^fSchmerz: see Ch. 6, b.

^gRuhig mag — sehn: "I would-fain see you come and go, without being fluttered." — Ruhig: see Suf. 11. — Mag: from mögen, see Ch. 10, b; and note ^g to "The Castle by the Sea."

^hEurer Augen stilles Weinen: "The silent sadness of your eyes"; see note ^{ak} to "The Pilgrim." — For Auge, see Ch. 16, b, and 10, b. — For Weinen, see note ⁿ to "The Pilgrim."

Kann ich nicht verstehn."
Can I not understand."

Und er hört'sⁱ mit stummem Harm,
And he hears it with dumb grief [harm, pain],
Reißt sich blutend los^j,
Tears himself bleeding away [loose],
Preßt sie heftig in die Arme^k,
Presses her vehemently into the arms,
Schwingt sich auf sein Roß,
Swings himself on-to his horse,
Schickt zu seinen Männern^l allen
Sends to his vassals [men] all
In dem Lande Schweiß^m;
In the land (of) Switzerland;
Nach dem heiligenⁿ Grab^o sie wälzen,
To the Holy Grave they wander [walk],
Auf der Brust^p das Kreuz^q.
On the breast the Cross.

ⁱ hört's: contr. from hört es.

^j reißt and los: from losreissen; see Pr. 32.

^k in die Arme: means "into his arms." — The Article der, die, das, is often used for the Possessive Pronouns *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your*, *their*.

^l Männer: old and poetic, meaning "the men belonging to a feudal lord." Men in the usual sense is Männer.

^m Schweiß: derived from Schwytz, the canton which, with Uri and Unterwalden, led the way to Swiss independence. In like manner, the mere Province of Holland gave its name to the whole republic (now kingdom) of Holland. So with Austria, &c. — Some connect Schwytz with schwitzen to sweat; see Ch. 6, d, and 4, a; because climbing their Alps causes the Swiss to sweat!

ⁿ heilig: see Ch. 18, b; and Suf. 11. Conn. with *hail!* *hale*, *health*, to *heal* (or make *whole*), to *hallow* (or make *holy*); hence Heilige a *hallow* or *Saint* (as in *Allhallows* or *All-Saints*). The Saviour is in German called der Heiland *the healing (one)*.

^o Grab: see Ch. 13. — Das heilige Grab means "the Holy Sepulchre" at Jerusalem.

^p auf der Brust: means "on their breast"; see note ^k.

^q Kreuz: from the Lat. *crux*. — The German for a *crusade* is Kreuzzug, from Kreuz and ziehen to travel.

Großer Thaten^s dort geschehen
 Great deeds there happen
 Durch^t der Helden Arm^u;
 Through the heroes' arm;
 Ihres Helmes Büsche^u wehen
 Their helmet's plumes [bushes] wave
 In der Feinde Schwarm^u,
 In the foemen's swarm,
 Und des Toggenburgers Name
 And the Toggenburgher's name
 Schrekt^v den Muselmann;
 Scares the Mussulman;
 Doch^t das Herz von seinem Grame
 Yet [though] the heart from its grief
 Nicht genesen kann.
 Not recover can.

Und ein Jahr hat er's getragen^w,
 And a year has he it borne,
 Trägt's^w nicht länger mehr,
 Bears it not longer more,
 Ruhe kann er nicht erjagen^x
 Peace can he not overtake
 Und verläßt^y das Heer,
 And forsakes the army,

^rgroß: see Ch. 16, *a*, and 4, *b*.

^sThat: (from thun to do); see Ch. 2; also "N.B.", page 74.

^tdurch and doch: see Ch. 1, *a*, and 9, *b*.

^uder Helden Arm: "the arm of the heroes"; see note ^{ak} to "The Pilgrim." — Ihres Helmes Büsche: "the plumes of their helmet." — In der Feinde Schwarm: "in the thickest of the foe."

^vschrekt: from schreden; conn. with shriek, screech, &c.

^wgetragen and trägt: from tragen to bear or carry; see Ch. 10, *b*. — Trägt's for trägt es.

^xerjagen: to hunt down, from jagen to hunt; see Pr. 4, *a*.

^yverläßt: from verlassen; see Pr. 10, *a*.

Sieht ein Schiff an Joppe's Strand,
Sees a ship on Joppa's strand,
Das die Segel bläht;
That its sails puffs-out [*blows*];
Schiffet^z heim^z zum^{aa} theuren Lande,
Sails home to the dear land,
Wo ihr Athem^{ab} weht.
Where her breath breathes [*wafsts*].

Und an ihres Schlosses^{ac} Pforte^{ad}
And at her castle's portal
Klopft^{ae} der Pilger an^{ae};
Knocks the Pilgrim —;
Ach! und mit dem Donnerworte^{af}
Alas! and with this thunder-word
Wird sie aufgethan^{ag}:
Is it opened:

^z Schiffet and heim: from *heimschiffen*; see Pr. 25.

^{aa} zum: for zu dem.

^{ab} wo ihr Athem weht: means "Where she draws her breath." — Athem, conn. with the Greek *atmos*, whence *atmo-sphere*.

^{ac} Schlosses: from *Schloß*; see note ^a to "The Castle by the Sea."

^{ad} Pforte: from the Lat. *porta* gate; whence *porter* a gatekeeper, and French *porte* door. See Ch. 12.

^{ae} klopft and an: from *anslopfen*; see Pr. 15.

^{af} Donnerworte: from *Donner* (see Ch. 1, *a*, and 19), and *Wort*, see Ch. 2.

^{ag} aufgethan: from *aufsthun* (*up-do*); see Pr. 16, *b*. — In Old English, to *dip* (*do up*) is to open; to *don* (*do on*) is to put on; to *doff* (*do off*) is to take off.

"Then up he rose, and donn'd his clothes,
"And dupp'd the chamber-door."

"Thou wear a lion's hide? Doff it for shame,
"And hang a calf-skin on those recreant limbs!"

SHAKSPEARE.

Formerly doors hung down like curtains, and had to be lifted. The lid of a box is also lifted or *done-up* when it is *opened* (that is, *uppened*, put *up*).

"Die ihr sucht, trägt den Schleier,
 "(She) whom you seek, wears the veil,

M.A. SECTION

430 SSG IV 26'

Sonnenschein & Stallybrass.

German for the English

3-2-2020 7/7/2020

]."

Lat. *feriae*.

e took his

16415 / 3884

der a com-
l herunter;
see Ch. 1, a.

^ap unbekannt: "unrecognized"; see Pr. 49. — Bekannt, from kennen; see note ^b to "Mignon."

^aq es bedt: see note ^v to "The Erlking"; and note ⁱ to "Mignon."

Sieht ein Schiff an Joppe's Strande,
Sees a ship on Joppa's strand,
Das die Segel bläht;
That its sails puff
Schiffet' heim
Sails hom
Wo ist
Where

U
A
R
K
W
A
D
I

2
a
s
l
a

I

ea."
der,
ort,
ng-
to

The lid of a box is also lifted or *done-up* when it is *opened* (that is, *upped*, put up).

"Die ihr sucht, trägt den Schleier,
 "(She) whom you seek, wears the veil,
 Ist des Himmels Braut.
 Is (the) heaven's bride.
 Gestern^{ah} war des Tages Feier^{ai},
 Yesterday was the day's festivity,
 Der sie Gott getraut^{aj}."
 Which her to-God (has) wedded [be-troth-ed]."

Da verläßet^y er auf immer
 Then forsakes he for ever
 Seiner Väter Schloß^{ak};
 His fathers' castle;
 Seine Waffen^{al} sieht er nimmer^{am}
 His weapons sees he never-more,
 Noch sein treues Roß.
 Nor his faithful horse.
 Von der Toggenburg^{an} hernieder
 From the Toggenburg de-
 Steigt^{ao} er unbekannt^{ap},
 scends he unknown,
 Denn es deckt^{aq} die edeln Glieder
 For there covers [decks] the noble limbs

^{ah} gestern: see Ch. 10, b.

^{ai} Feier: conn. with Ferien holidays, our *fair*, and the Lat. *feriae*.

^{aj} getraut: for getraut hat; from trauen; see note ^b.

^{ak} seiner Väter Schloß: see note ^{ak} to "The Pilgrim."

^{al} Waffen: see Ch. 12.

^{am} nimmer: see note ^z to "The Pilgrim."

^{an} Toggenburg: here means his Castle, from which he took his name; see note ^{aa} to "The Pilgrim."

^{ao} hernieder and steigt: from *herniedersteigen*. — Hernieder a compound of *her* and *nieder*, meaning the same as *herab* and *herunter*; see Diagram, page 67, and Pr. 30. — Nieder: *nether*; see Ch. 1, a.

^{ap} unbekannt: "unrecognized"; see Pr. 49. — Bekannt, from *femmen*; see note ^b to "Mignon."

^{aq} es deckt: see note ^v to "The Erlking"; and note ⁱ to "Mignon."

Härenes Gewand^{ar}.

(A) hair garment.

Und er baut sich eine Hütte
And he builds himself a hut

Jener Gegend^{as} nah,
To-that [yon] region nigh,

Wo das Kloster^{at} aus der Mitte
Where the convent out-of the midst

Düstrer Linden sah;

Of-dusky lime-trees looked [saw];

Harrend von des Morgens Lichte^{an}
Waiting from the morning's light

Bis zu Abends Schein,
Till (to) evening's sheen,

Stille Hoffnung^{av} im Gesichte^{au},
(With) silent hope in-the face,

Saß^{aw} er da allein^{ax},
Sat he there alone,

Blickte nach dem Kloster drüben^{ay},
Looked towards the convent [cloister] opposite,

Blickte Stunden lang
Looked hours long

^{ar}Härenes: from hären *made of hair*; see Suf. 8. — Gewand: see note ^j to "The Erlking." — "A hair garment covers his limbs," means "He has turned Monk."

^{as}Gegend: from gegen *against*; see Ch. 10, *b*; Gegend the scene facing you, over against you.

^{at}Kloster: cloister, Lat. *claustrum*; from *claudere*, to close. See note ^s to "Mignon."

^{au}Licht and Gesicht: see Ch. 9, *b*. — For Gesicht see note ^f to "The Erlking".

^{av}Hoffnung: see note ⁿ to "The Pilgrim."

^{aw}Saß: see Ch. 4, *b*.

^{ax}allein: from *ein one*; see Ch. 18, *b*.

^{ay}drüben: (from *dar there*, and *über over*, on the other side) means *over there*, opposite; but *drüber* (*there-over*) means *over it*, see note ^f to "The Castle by the Sea"; and *dröben* (*there-above*) *up-there*.

Nach dem Fenster [Lat. *fenestra*] seiner Lieben,
 Towards the window of his Love,
 Bis das Fenster flang,
 Till the window sounded [*clanged*],
 Bis die Liebliche^{az} sich zeigte,
 Till the Lovely (one) herself showed,
 Bis das theure Bild^{ba}
 Till the dear figure
 Sich in's Thal^{bb} herunterneigte^{bc},
 Herself into-the valley down-inclined,
 Ruhig^{bd}, engelmild.
 Peaceful, angel-mild.

Und dann legt'^{be} er froh sich nieder^{be},
 And then laid he gladly himself down,
 Schief^{bf} getröstet ein^{bf},
 Fell-asleep consoled —,
 Still sich freuend^{bg}, wenn es wieder
 Silently rejoicing, when it again
 Morgen würde sein.
 Morning should be.

^{az} Liebliche: from lieben to *love*; lieblich *lovely*, see Suf. 13, b; die Liebliche, the Adjective used as a Noun (Feminine).

^{ba} Bild: see note¹ to "Mignon."

^{bb} in's: for in das. — Thal: see Ch. 2.

^{bc} herunterneigte: from *herunter* (*here-under*) down, and *neigen* to incline; see Pr. 30 and Diagram, page 67.

^{bd} ruhig: see Suf. 11.

^{be} Legte and nieder: from *nieberlegen*; see Pr. 35.

^{bf} schief and ein: from *einschlafen*; see Pr. 21, a. — For *schlafen* see Ch. 6, a, and 12.

^{bg} sich freuend: from *sich freuen* to gladden oneself, to rejoice; whence Freude joy; froh glad; fröhlich *frolic*, merry. Conn. with the Gothic *frijon* to love, of which the Pres. Participle *frijond* loving, has become Freund friend (Anglo-S. *freond*); also with freyen to woo or wed; Freyer a suitor; Friede peace; Friedrich Frederick, rich in peace; etc. — The German goddess, who (it is thought) answered to the Roman *Venus*, was called Freya; hence, Freitag Friday, is in Lat. *Veneris dies*, in Italian *Venerdì*, and in French *Vendredi*.

Und so saß^{aw} er viele Tage^{bh},
 And so sat he many days,
 Saß viel' Jahre lang,
 Sat many years long,
 Harrend ohne Schmerz^c und Klage^{bi},
 Waiting without pain and wail,
 Bis das Fenster klang,
 Till the window sounded,

Bis die Liebliche^{az} sich zeigte,
 Till the Lovely (one) herself showed,
 Bis das theure Bild
 Till the dear figure
 Sich in's^{bb} Thal herunterneigte^{bc},
 Herself into the dale down-inclined,
 Ruhig^{bd}, engelmild.
 Peaceful, angel-mild.

Und so saß^{aw} er, eine Leiche^{bj},
 And so sat he, a corpse,
 Eines Morgens da;
 One morning there;
 Nach dem Fenster noch das bleiche [Ch. 8],
 Towards the window still the pale
 Stille Antlitz sah.
 Silent face looked [saw].

SCHILLER.

^{bh} Tag: see Ch. 2, and 10, b.^{bi} Klage: from *flagen* to wail. — Many FEMININE Nouns are formed by adding =e to the root of a Verb; as, die Habe from haben to have, die Ruhe fr. ruhen to rest; so Liebe, Labe, Strafe, Fähre, Eile, Sorge, Bitte. — Sometimes the =e is added to the Strong root of the verb; as, die Woge fr. wiegen (wog) to rock; die Gabe fr. geben (gab) to give; die Stunde fr. stehen (stand or stund) to stand.^{bj} Leiche: In Scotland the watching (or *waking*) beside a corpse is called *lyke-wake*. We call the roofed gateway of a churchyard, under which the corpse rests for a short time, a *lych-gate*; see Ch. 8, and 9, a.

Sprüche.

SAYINGS.

Warum^b bin ich vergänglich^c, o Zeus^d? so fragte
Why am I perishable, O Zeus? so asked
die Schönheit^e.

— Beauty.

Macht' ich doch^f, sagte der Gott, nur das Vergängliche^g schön.
Made I though, said the god, only the Perishable beautiful.

Und die Liebe, die Blumen, der Thau und die Jugend
And — Love, — Flowers, the Dew and — Youth
vernahmen's^h;
heard it;

Alle gingenⁱ sie wegⁱ, weinend, von Jupiter's Thron.
All went they away, weeping, from Jupiter's throne.

Früchte bringt das Leben^j dem Mann, doch hängen
Fruits brings — Life to the man; yet hang
sie selten [Ch. 14, a]
they seldom

^aSprüche: from sprechen to speak; Spruch speech, saying or saw (as in "wise saws"); see Ch. 8.

^bwarum: (from was what, and um about), what about? what for? wherefore? why?

^cvergänglich: see note ^x to "The Pilgrim."

^dZens: the Greek god, answering to the Roman Jupiter.

^edie Schönheit: see Suf. 2. — ABSTRACT NOUNS, (such as beauty, love, youth, life, nature) take the DEFINITE ARTICLE before them in German, though not in English.

^fmachte ich doch: means "Why, I made."

^gdas Vergängliche: is here a neuter Noun, meaning "that which is perishable."

^hvernahmen's: contr. from vernahmen es; see note ⁿ to "The Castle by the Sea."

ⁱgingen and weg: from weggehen; see Pr. 40.

^jFrüchte — Leben: means "Life brings Fruits"; see note ^d to "Knight Toggenburg." — Früchte: from Frucht; see Ch. 9, b.

Roth^k und lustig^l am Zweig^m, wie uns
 Red and gay [lusty] on-the branch [twig], as us
 ein Apfelⁿ begrüßt^o.
 an apple greets.

Kinder^p werfen den Ball an die Wand, und fangen
 Children throw the ball at the wall, and catch
 ihn wieder;
 it again;

Aber ich lob' mir das Spiel, wirft mir der Freund
 But I praise (me) the game, throws me the Friend
 ihn zurück^q.
 it back.

Halte das Bild der Würdigen^r fest^s! Wie leuchtend^t
 Hold the image of-the Worthies fast! Like light-
 tende^t Sterne^u
 giving stars

^kroth: see Ch. 16, *c*, and 2.

^llustig: see Suf. 11. — Lust is pleasure, desire or lust, as in “The lusts (desires) of the body”; hence gelüsten to list, as in “The wind bloweth where it listeth”, es gelüstet mich (it listeth me) I desire:—

“Me lists not (*I will not*) at this tide declare—”

SIR W. SCOTT.

^mZweig: see Ch. 4, *a*.

ⁿApfel: see Ch. 12.

^obegrüßt: from grüßen to greet, see Ch. 4, *b*; begrüßen, see Pr. 1.

^pKinder: the plural of Kind; see note ^b to “The Erlking.”

^qwirft mir der Freund ihn zurück: means “When a Friend throws it back to me,” and not a mere Wall. — Wirft and zurück: from zurückwerfen; see Pr. 43.

^rWürdigen: plural of Würdige, a Noun formed from the Adjective würdig worthy; see Suf. 11; and Ch. 1, *a*.

^sfest and Stern: see Ch. 17.

^tleuchtende: from leuchten; see the word Licht in Ch. 9, *b*.

Theilte^u sie aus^u die Natur^e durch den unendlichen^v
 Dealt them out — Nature through — infinite
 Raum.
 space [room].

Wem zu glauben ist^w, redlicher Freund^x, das
 Whom to believe (is), honest friend, that
 kann ich Dir sagen:
 can I to-thee tell [say]:

Glaube dem Leben^e; es lehrt^y besser^z als Redner^{aa}
 Believe — Life; it teaches better than orator
 und Buch^{ab}.
 and book.

Wißt^{ac} ihr, wie auch der Kleine was
 Know ye, how also [eke] the Little (one) (some-) what
 ist? Er mache^{ad} das Kleine
 is? Let him do [make] the Little (thing)

^u theilte and aus: from austheilen; see Pr. 17, a.

^v unendlich: see Pr. 49. — For eudlich, see Suf. 13, a.

^w Wem zu glauben ist: means "Whom we are to believe"; the construction is the same as in the Lat: *cui sit credendum*. — Glauben is from the same root as lieben to *love*; hence Löben (to find lovely), to praise; glauben for gelauen (to find acceptable), to *be-lieve*; Glaube *be-lief*; erlauben to give *leave*, allow; verlauben to give leave of absence or *furlough*; geloben (agree solemnly), take a *vow*; Gelübde a *vow*, and in old times a Society formed by taking vows, hence perhaps our *club*.

^x Freund: see note ^{bg} to "Knight Toggenburg."

^y lehrt: from lehren to teach; whence Lehre *lore* (see Ch. 18, a); and lernen to *learn*, that is, to be taught, the addition of -n giving a Passive meaning.

^z besser: see Ch. 4, b.

^{aa} Redner: see Suf. 4, b.

^{ab} Buch: derived from Buche; see Ch. 8.

^{ac} wißt: from wissen (see note ^b to "Mignon"; and Ch. 4, b); conn. with to wit, "I *wist not*," witty, wise, Witena-gemöt (meeting of the *witting* or knowing ones), etc., etc., — Hence Wissenschaft science, Gewissen [Old Engl. *in-wit*] con-science; bewußt conscious, etc., etc.

^{ad} Er mache: "*He make*"; the Subjunctive is used Imperatively, as in Latin.

Recht^{ae}; der Große^{af} begehrt just so das Große^{af}
 Rightly; the Great desires just so the Great
 zu thun.
 to do.

Wer ist denn wirklich^{ag} ein Fürst^{ah}? Ich habe es
 Who is then really a prince? I have it
 immer^{ai} gesehen,
 always seen,

Der nur ist wirklich Fürst, der es vermöchte^{aj} zu sein.
 He only is really prince, who it was-able to be.

GOETHE.

Der junge Hase — (Fabel).
 THE YOUNG HARE — (FABLE).

Mit ernstem Schritte, wie der Held
 With solemn [earnest] stride, like the hero
 Von Mancha^a, kam ein junger Hase [Ch. 5, a]
 Of Mancha, came a young Hare

^{ae} recht: see Ch. 9, b.

^{af} der Große: means "the great man," the article der being Masculine; but das Große "the great thing," the article das being Neuter. — So with der Kleine and das Kleine.

^{ag} wirklich: from wirken to work, to act; see Suf. 13, b. — So actual, and real, from the Lat. actu-s an act, and re-s a thing, a matter of fact.

^{ah} Fürst: the first (that is, foremost) man in a nation; really a Superlative of vor be-fore. The English prince, Lat. prin-cep-s, is from prim-us first, and cap-ere to take. — A German Fürst is properly a reigning sovereign.

^{ai} immer: see note ^z to "The Pilgrim."

^{aj} vermöchte: from mögen may or can, see Ch. 9, b, and 10, b; vermögen to have the power (or might); see Pr. 10, c. — Der es vermöchte zu seyn: means "who had-the-power to be it, who managed to be it."

^a "The hero of Mancha" was Don Quixote.

Nach Haus, und seine wunde Nase
Home [to-house], and his wounded nose
Schien^b laut zu rufen: Staune, Welt!
Seemed aloud to cry: Be-astounded, world!

„Du blutest, Neffe?“ sprach ein Greis^c
“Thou bleedest, nephew?” spoke a graybeard
Zu ihm, „was hat sich zugetragen^d?“
To him, “what has happened?”
„Je nun, ich habe mich geschlagen^e,“
“Hey now, I have fought,”
Versezt^f er, „und der Kampf war heiß^g.“
Replied he, “and the battle was hot.”

„Was,“ rief^h die ganze Sippschaftⁱ aus^h,
“What,” cried the whole kindred out,
„Geschlagen? wie? mit welchem Feinde^j?
“Fought? how? with what foe?
Mit einem Hund?“ „Ja, liebe Freunde^j,
With a hound?” “Yes, dear friends,
Mit einer ungeheuer^k Maus.“
With an enormous mouse.”

K. G. PFEFFEL.

^b schien: from scheinen to shine, appear, seem; conn. with sham.

^c Greis: [grizzled], conn. with grau gray.

^d zugetragen: from zutragen; see Pr. 42.

^e mich geschlagen: from sich schlagen (French *se battre*) to strike oneself, or to strike one another, hence to fight. — For schlagen, see Ch. 6, *a*, and 10, *b*.

^f versetzte: from versetzen; see Pr. 10, *c*.

^g heiß: see Ch. 18, *b*, and 4, *b*.

^h rief and aus: from aufrufen; see Pr. 17, *a*.

ⁱ Sippschaft: see Suf. 6, *b*. — Sipp is conn. with the Old English *sib* or *sip*, which meant kinsman; hence *gossips* [*god-sib*] were those who had stood godfathers or godmothers to the same child.

^j Feinde: the Gothic *fijan* (Anglo-S. *feon*) meant to hate; the Pres. Participle *fijand* hating, has become *Feind* *fiend*, that is, *foe* (Anglo-S. *feond*). Our *foe*, *fiend*, &c. are from the same root. — *Freunde*: see note ^{bg} to “Knight Toggenburg.”

^k ungeheuer: see Pr. 49.

Das Johanniswürmchen^a — (Fabel).
THE GLOW-WORM — (FABLE).

Ein Johanniswürmchen saß,
A Glow-worm sat,
Seines Sternenscheins
Of his star-shine
Unbewußt^b, im weichen^c Gras
Unconscious, in-the soft grass
Eines Bardenhains.
Of-a bard's-grove.

Leise fröch^d aus faulem Moos
Softly crept out-of rotten [foul] moss
Seine Nachbarin^e,
His neighbouress,
Eine Kröte, hin^d und schoß
A Toad, up (to him), and shot
All ihr Gift auf ihn.
All her poison upon him.

„Ach! was hab' ich dir gethan?“
“Alas! what have I to-thee done?”
Rief^f der Wurm ihr zu.
Cried the Worm to-her—.

^a Johanniswürmchen: (*John's-wormkin*). According to an old German legend, St. John walked out one evening to meditate; and, while in loving contemplation of God and His works, he spied a little dark Grub at his feet. He took it up with a blessing and set it on a shrub, to prevent its being trodden on; but, transfigured by the Saint's touch, the Grub began to glow with love and beauty. So runs the legend; but the *Johanniswurm*, like the *Johannisbeere* (red currant), appears about St. John's day or Midsummer. — For *Würmchen*, see Suf. 1.

^b unbewußt: see Pr. 49; also note ^{ac} to “Sayings,” and note ^b to “Mignon.”

^c weichen: from *weich* [*weak*, see Ch. 9, *a*] soft, yielding to the touch; from the Verb *weichen* to give way, to yield.

^d fröch and *hin*: from *hinfrieden*; see Pr. 29.

^e Nachbarin: see Suf. 5; and Ch. 9, *b*. *Nachbar* neighbour, from *nahe* *nigh*, and *Bauer* [*boor*, “Dutch boer”] a tiller of land, meant one who tills land near you.

^f rief and *zu*: from *zurufen*; see Pr. 42.

"Ei!" führ^a ihn das Unthier^b ans,
"Ha!" snarled-at him the Monster —,

"Warum^c glänzest du?"

"Why glowest [glintest] thou?"

K. G. PFEFFEL.

Der Schmetterling^d und die Biene — (Fabel).

THE BUTTERFLY AND THE BEE — (FABLE).

Die Biene ließ^e den Schmetterling
The Bee let the Butterfly

Einst^f ihre fetten Speicher sehn.
Once her fat storehouses see.

"Schön!" rief der bunte Guest: "doch muß ich
"Fine!" cried the many-coloured guest: "yet must I
dir gestehen^g,
to-thee confess,

Ich tauschte^h nicht mit Dir." — "Warum nicht?
I would-not-change with thee." — "Why not?
dummes Ding!
stupid thing!

Was hast denn Du? Laß sehn; wir wollen
What hast then thou? Let (us) see; we will
inventirenⁱ:
make-an-inventory:

^aführ and an; from anfahren; see Pr. 15. — Fahren to drive, see note ^a to "The Erlking"; anfahren, to fly at, to attack, but chiefly in gruff words; hence to snap at, snarl-at.

^bUnthier: see Pr. 46.

^cwarum: see note ^b to "Sayings."

^dSchmetterling: from schmettern (see Suf. 17, *a*) to make a vibratory motion or sound, to flutter; Schmetterling (*flutter-ling*), see Suf. 1.

^eließ: Past Tense of lassen; see Ch. 4, *b*.

^feinst: see Ch. 3.

^ggestehen: see Pr. 5.

^htauschte: here it is the Subjunctive, "would change."

ⁱinventiren: see Suf. 19.

Ich hab' ein volles^g Haus!" — "Und ich... nichts zu verlieren.^h"
 I have a full house!" — "And I — nothing to lose."

PFEFFEL.

Des Esels^a Trost^b — (Fabel).
 THE ASS'S CONSOLATION — (FABLE).

Hab' nichts, mich^c dran^d zu freuen,
 (I) have nothing, — whereat to rejoice,
 Bin dumm und ungestalt^e,
 Am stupid and mis-shapen,
 Ohn' Muth^f und ohn' Gewalt^g;
 Without courage and without strength;

^gvolles: from voll; see Ch. 19.^hverlieren: see Pr. 10, a.; and Ch. 5, b. Notice the interchange of R and S, in hier-en, Ver-lus-t, lose, lor-n, los-t; in Hase hare; and in er-fies-en choose, er-for-eu chos-en, whence Kur choice, election, Kurfürst Prince Elector (one of those by whom a German Emperor was elected), and Kursachsen Electorate of Saxony, &c.

^aEsel: from the Lat. *asinus* an ass, *asellus* a little ass. — The Ass was probably introduced both into Germany and Britain by the Romans, or at all events from the South of Europe; hence our Latin names for the animal. See note^s to "Mignon."

^bTrost: see note^b to "Knight Toggenburg."^cmich freuen: see note^{bg} to "Knight Toggenburg."^ddran: from dar there, and an on; daran there-on, there-at.^eun gestalt: see Pr. 49. — Un is conn. with ohn', contr. from ohne.

^fMuth: heart, courage (which comes from the French *œur* heart); conn. with mood, as "to be in a sullen mood"; see Ch. 2. — From Muth we have some interesting derivations; for example: —

MASCULINE.

Hochmuth (*high mood*) haughtiness.
 Kleinmuth (*little mood*) pusillanimity, faintheartedness.
 Übermuth (*over mood*) arrogance.
 Unmuth (Pr. 46) ill-humour.
 Freimuth (*free mood*) frankness.
 Mis̄muth (Pr. 45) displeasure.

FEMININE.

Demuth (*serving mood*) humility.
 Großmuth (*great mood*) magnanimity, generosity.
 Schwermuth (*heavy mood*) melancholy.
 Anmuth agreeableness, sweetness, grace.

NEUTER.

Gemüth (Pr. 44, b) all the emotions, spirit, temper.
^gGewalt: see note^z to "The Erlking."

Mein^h spotten und mich scheuenⁱ
 Of-me make-fun and me shun
 Die Menschen^j jung und alt^k;
 — Men young and old;
 Bin weder warm noch falt^k!
 (I) am neither hot [warm] nor cold!

Hab' nichts, mich dran zu freuen,
 (I) have nothing — whereat to rejoice,
 Bin dummi und ungestalt,^e
 Am stupid and mis-shapen,
 Muß Stroh^l und Disteln^m fäuen,
 Must straw and thistles chew [see Ch. 8],
 Wer'dⁿ unter Säcken alt —
 (I) grow under sacks old —

^h mein: here an abbreviation of meiner, the Genitive case of ich.
ⁱ scheuen: to shy-at or shun; whence scheu shy.

^j Menschen: Mensch, like the Lat. *homo*, means man (not beast nor angel; therefore it includes man and woman); but Mann, like the Lat. *vir*, means man (not woman). The one refers to the Species, the other to the Sex. Mensch, however, was derived from Mann, being contr. from männisch; see Suf. 12.

^k alt and falt: see Ch. 15, and 2.

^l Stroh: straw (from freuen to strew); see Ch. 10, a.

^m Disteln: from Distel; see Ch. 1, a.

ⁿ werde: from werden to become, or come-to-be. This Verb will bear many translations; for example: —

Ich wurde ein Kaufmann	I became a merchant.
Er wird reich	He is-getting rich.
Sie wurde krank	She fell sick.
Die Milch wird sauer	The milk turns sour.
Es werde Licht	Let there be light.

"Wie viel werde ich Dir nicht für diese Liebe schuldig! How much do I not grow indebted to thee for this love!" — GOETHE. — "Däß dem Sterbenden werde sein Heil That salvation may come to the dying man." — SCHILLER. — "Und der wilde Strom wird zum Meere And the wild stream swells into a sea." — SCHILLER.

Thus werden always denotes a Process or Development. — "The Saxon *weorðan*, equivalent to the German werden, means to grow, to become; traces of which old vocable are still found in the North-country dialects, as, 'What is word of him?' meaning 'What

Ach, die Natur schuf^o mich im Grimme!
 Ah, — Nature created me in-her wrath [grimness]!
 Sie gab mir nichts . . . als eine schöne Stimme!
 She gave me nothing — but a beautiful voice!

M. CLAUDIUS.

Das Veilchen.

THE VIOLET.

Ein Veilchen^a auf der Wiese stand,
 A Violet on the meadow stood,
 Gebückt in sich und unbekannt^b:
 Bowed into itself and unknown:
 Es war ein herzig's^c Veilchen.
 It was a darling [hearty] Violet.
 Da kam die junge Schäferin^d
 There came the youthful Shepherdess
 Mit leichtem Schritt und munterm Sinn
 With light step [stride] and gay mood

is become of him?' and the like. Nay, we in modern English still say, 'Wo worth the hour' (Wo befal the hour), and speak of the 'Weird Sisters,' not to mention the innumerable names of Places still ending in *weorth* or *worth*, such as Wandsworth or Woden's *worth*, that is to say, *Growth*, Increase, or as we should now name it, *Estate*. . . . And indeed our common noun *worth*, in the sense of *value*, does not this mean simply, What a thing has *grown* to, What a man has *grown* to, How much he amounts to, — by the Threadneedle-street standard or another!" — T. CARLYLE.

^a schuf: from schaffen; see Ch. 12.

^a Veilchen: see Suf. 1. — Both the English and the German have added a Diminutive Suffix to the Latin name, as an expression of endearment, though *viola* itself was already a Diminutive in Latin.

^b unbekannt: from fennen, see note ^b to "Mignon"; bekennen, see Pr. 1; of which the Past Participle is bekannt; whence unbekannt, see Pr. 49.

^c herzig: see Suf. 11.

^d Schäferin: from Schaf sheep, see Ch. 16, a. and 12; Schäfer, see Suf. 4, b; Schäferin, see Suf. 5.

Daher^e, daher,
Along, along,
Die Wiese her und sang.
The meadow along, and sang.

Ach! denkt das Veilchen, wär' ich nur
Ah! thinks the Violet, were I but
Die schönste Blume der Natur,
The fairest flower [bloom] of(-the) nature,
Ach, nur ein kleines Weilchen^f,
Ah, only a little wee-while,
Bis mich das Liebchen^g abgepfüßt^h,
Till me the Darling (had) plucked-off,
Und an dem Busen [Ch. 14, a] mattⁱ gedrückt!
And on the bosom faint pressed!
Ach nur, ach nur
Ah only, ah only
Ein Viertelstündchen^j lang!
A little-quarter-of-an-hour long!

Ach! aber ach! das Mädchen^k kam
Ah! but ah! the Girl came,
Und nicht in Acht das Veilchen nahm^l,
And not into heed the Violet took,
Ertrat^l das arme Veilchen.
Trod-to-death the poor Violet.

^edaher: see Diagram, p. 67. ^fWeilchen and Liebchen: see Suf. 1.

^gabgepfüßt: from pfüßfen, see Ch. 12; abpfüßfen, see Pr. 14.

^hmatt: the Arabic *māta* “is - dead”; hence Schach-matt checkmate means “the king (Shah) is dead.” — The game of chess was brought into Europe by the Arabs.

ⁱViertelstündchen: from vier four, see Ch. 18, c; Viertel (contr. from der vierte Theil the fourth part) quarter; Stunde hour; Viertel-stunde quarter of an hour; Viertelstündchen, see Suf. 1.

^jMädchen: (from the old word Maid maid), see Suf. 1. — The Nouns Mädchen, Liebchen, Veilchen are all of Neuter gender, because Diminutives in -chen or -lein are always Neuter.

^kUnd nicht — nahm: The whole line means, “And took no heed (or notice) of the Violet.”

^lertrat: from extreten; see Pr. 4, a.

Es sank und starb^m, und freut' sichⁿ noch:
 It sank and died, and rejoiced still:
 Und sterb' ich denn, so sterb' ich doch.
 And die I then, so die I yet
 Durch^o sie, durch sie,
 Through her, through her,
 Zu ihren Füßen^p doch.
 At her feet yet.

GOETHE.

Der Sänger.

THE MINSTREL.

"Was hör' ich draußen^b vor dem Thor [see Ch. 2],
 "What hear I outside before the gate,
 Was auf der Brücke^c schallen [see Ch. 7]?
 What on the bridge sounding?
 Läß den Gesang^d vor unserm Ohr
 Let the song before our ear [see Ch. 16, c]
 Im Saale wiederhallen."
 In-the hall resound."
 Der König sprach's, der Page lief^e;
 The King spake it, the Page ran;

^mstarb: from sterben; see Ch. 13, and 17.ⁿfreut sich: from sich freuen; see note ^{bg} to "Knight Toggenburg".^odoch and durch: see Ch. 1, a, and 9, b.^pFüßen: from Fuß; see Ch. 4, b.^aSänger: read note ^a to "Knight Toggenburg," as far as the word "reaper." From the Weak root sang comes Singer a singer; from the Strong root sang comes Sänger a minstrel or poet.^bdraußen: from dar there, and aus out; hence daraufen or draußen out-there, outside; see note ^{ay} to "Knight Toggenburg".^cBrücke: see Ch. 8.^dGesang: see Pr. 44, b.^ewiederhallen: see Pr. 41; hallen is conn. with halloo! holloa! howl, etc.^flief: from laufen; see Ch. 12.

Der Knab^g es kam, der König rief:
 The Boy came, the King cried:
 „Läßt^h mir herein den Alten!“
 “Let-in to-me — the Old (man).”

Gegrüßet^j seid mir, edle^k Herrn,
 Greeted be (by) me, noble Lords,
 Gegrüßt ihr, schöne Damen^l.
 Greeted ye, fair Ladies.

Welch' reicher Himmel! Stern bei Stern,
 What (a) rich heaven! Star by star [see Ch. 17],
 Wer kennet ihre Namen?
 Who knows their names?

Im Saal voll Pracht^m und Herrlichkeitⁿ
 In-the hall full (of) splendour and lordliness
 Schließt, Augen, euch^o; hier ist nicht Zeit^p
 Close, eyes, yourselves; here is no time

^g Knabe: see note ^c to “The Erlking.”

^h Läßt and herein: from hereinlassen; see Pr. 30; and the Diagram, page 67.

ⁱ den Alten: means “the old man,” because it has the Masc. Article; were it Fem., it would be die Alte, and Neut. das Alte; see note ^a to “Sayings.”

^j gegrüßt: from grüßen; see Ch. 4, *b*.

^k edle: from edel; see Ch. 1, *a*.

^l Damen: from Dame, which, like our *dame*, is borrowed from the French. — From the Lat. dominus lord, come the Spanish *Don*, and our “the dons”; and from *domina* lady, come the Spanish *Doña*, the Italian *Donna* (as in *Madonna*), and the French *dame*.

^m Pracht: see Ch. 9, *b*.

ⁿ Herrlichkeit: see Suf. 13, *a*, and 2.

^o Schließt, Augen, euch: means “Be shut, mine eyes.” — For schließen, see note ^a to “The Castle by the Sea”; for Augen, Ch. 16, *b*, and 10, *b*; for euch, 9, *b*.

^p Zeit: (see Ch. 4, *a*, and 2); conn. with tide in noon-tide, Whitsun-tide, etc.; with betide; and also with the tide, because it occurs or betides at regular times; Zeitung is *tidings*, news, newspaper.

“Tis at such a tide and hour

“Wizard, witch and fiend have power.” — SIR W. SCOTT.

“What hath this day deserved, what hath it done,

“That it in golden letters should be set

“Among the high-tides in the calendar?”

SHAKSPEARE; *King John*, act iii. scene 1.

Sich staunend^a zu ergötzen [see Pr. 4, a].
One's self wondering to delight.

Der Sänger drückt^r die Augen ein^r,
The Minstrel pressed the eyes in,
Und schlug in vollen Tönen;
And struck [Ch. 10, b] in full tones;
Die Ritter^s schauten mutig^u drein^v,
The Knights looked bravely on,
Und in den Schoß die Schönen.
And into the lap the Fair (ones).
Der König, dem das Lied gefiel^w,
The King, (to) whom the lay pleased,
Ließ ihm zum Lohne für sein Spiel,
Let to-him, as-the reward for his playing,
Eine goldne Kette^x bringen.
A golden chain be-brought [bring].

Die goldne Kette gieb mir nicht,
The golden chain give me not,
Die Kette gieb den Rittern,
The chain give to-the knights,
Vor deren lühnem Angesicht^y
Before whose bold [keen] countenance

^astaunend: from staunen to be stunned, astounded, astonished, astonished, etc.

^rdrückte and ein: from eindrücken; see Pr. 21, a.

^sRitter: see note ^a to "Knight Toggenburg." — While some words come to have a LOWER MEANING, others get a HIGHER. Thus Knabe, boy, has sunk into the Engl. knave; but Knecht, servant-man, has risen into our knight; and the Latin scuti-ger, armour-bearer, into our squire or esquire.

^tschauten: from schauen, conn. with show.

^umuthig: see Suf. 11; and note ^r to "The Ass's Consolation."

^vdrein: for darein there-into; from dar there, and ein into.

^wgefiel: from gefallen; see Pr. 5.

^xKette: conn. with the Lat. catena (whence con-catenation; and even chain, through the French chaîne, contr. from chatène.)

^yAngesicht: (see note ^r to "The Erlking"), from ansehen; see Pr. 15. — So our aspect, from Lat. ad at, and spec- look.

Der Feinde Lanzen^z splittern.
The foemen's lances splinter.

Gieb sie dem Kanzler, den du hast,
Give it to-the chancellor, whom thou hast,
Und laß ihn noch die goldne Last
And let him also this golden burden [*load*]
Zu^{aa} andern Lasten tragen^{ab}.
To other burdens carry.

Ich singe wie der Vogel^{ab} singt,
I sing as the bird [*fowl*] sings,
Der in den Zweigen^{ac} wohnet;
That in the branches [*twigs*] dwells;
Das Lied, das aus der Kehle bringt,
The lay, that out-of the throat forces-its-way [*throngs*],
Ist Lohn, der reichlich^{ad} lohnet;
Is reward, which richly rewards;
Doch, darf ich bitten^{ae}, bitt' ich eins^{af}:
Yet, dare I beg, beg I one (*thing*):
Läß mir^{ag} den besten Becher Weins
Let to-me the best goblet [*beaker*] of wine
In purem Golde reichen^{ag}.
In pure gold be-handed [*reach*].

Er setzt^{ah} ihn an^{ah}, er trank^{ai} ihn aus^{ai}:
He put it to-his-lips, he drank it off:

^z Der Feinde Lanzen: see note ^{ak} to "The Pilgrim." — This Poem, however, is by Goethe.

^{aa} zu: see Ch. 4, *a*; here it means "in addition to."

^{ab} tragen and Vogel: see Ch. 10, *b*.

^{ac} Zweigen: from Zweig; see Ch. 4, *a*.

^{ad} reichlich: see Suf. 13, *a*.

^{ae} darf ich bitten: means "if I may beg."

^{af} eins: from ein; see Ch. 18, *b*. — Eins means "one *thing*," the addition of the s has made it Neuter.

^{ag} Läß mir reichen: means "Let (some one) reach to me." So in the third verse, Der König ließ ihm bringen means "The King made (some one) bring to him."

^{ah} setzte and an: from aufsetzen; see Pr. 15.

^{ai} trank and aus: from austrinken; see Pr. 17, *b*.

O Trank^{an} voll süßer Labe^{a!}!
 O drink full of-sweet refreshment!
 Dreimal^{aj} hochbeglücktes^{ak} Haus,
 O thrice highly-favoured house,
 Wo das ist kleine Gabe^{a!}!
 Where that is (a) small gift!
 Ergeht's^{am} euch wohl, so denkt an mich,
 Goes it (with) you well, so think of me,
 Und danket Gott so warm, als ich
 And thank God as warmly as I
 Für diesen Trunk^{an} euch danke.
 For this draught you thank.

GOETHE.

Aus Wilhelm Meister.
 OUT-OF WILHELM MEISTER.

Wer^a nie sein Brod mit Thränen aß,
 Who never his bread with tears ate,
 Wer nie die kummervollen^b Mächte^c
 Who never the sorrowful nights
 Auf seinem Bette weinend saß,
 On his bed weeping sat,
 Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen^d Mächte^e.
 He knows you not, ye heavenly powers [*mights*].

^{aj}dreimal: from drei *three*; see note ^{an} to "The Pilgrim."

^{ak}hochbeglücktes: from beglücken, see Pr. 1; hochbeglücken, see Pr. 31.

^{al}Labe and Gabe: die Labe from laben to refresh; die Gabe from gab give, the Strong root of geben to give; see note ^{bi} to "Kn. Togg."

^{am}ergeht: from gehen (see Ch. 18, *a*); ergehen, see Pr. 4, *a*.

^{an}Trank and Trunk: Trank is some kind of drink or beverage; Trunk is a drink (or draught) of it. Examples:—

Der Meth ist ein altdeutscher Trank = mead is an old German drink.

Gib mir einen Trunk Meth = give me a drink (or draught) of mead.

^aWer: see Ch. 18, *a*. ^bkummervoll: see Suf. 16.

^cMächte and Mächte: from Nacht and Macht; see Ch. 9, *b*.

^dhimmlisch: see Suf. 12.

Ihr führte in's Leben uns hinein,
 Ye introduce into life us —,
 Ihr laßt den Armen schuldig^r werden,
 Ye let the poor (one) guilty become,
 Dann überlaßt ihr ihn der Pein;
 Then abandon ye him to-his torment [pain];
 Denn alle Schuld^r rächt sich auf Erden.
 For all guilt avenges [wreaks] itself upon earth.

GOETHE.

Die Bürgschaft. THE PLEDGE.

Zu Dionys, dem Tyrannen^b, schllich
 To Dionysius the Tyrant crept [slunk]
 Damon, den Dolch im Gewande^d;
 Damon, (with) the dagger [dirk] in-the garment;
 Ihn schlügen^e die Häschter^r in Bande^g.
 Him clapt the bailiffs into bonds.

^a führt and hinein: from hineinführen; see Pr. 30, and Diagram, page 67.

^r schuldig: see Suf. 11; Schuld is conn. with sollen, see note ^o to "The Erlking."

^s überlaßt: from überlassen; see Pr. 7.

^a Bürgschaft: see note ^{aa} to "The Pilgrim;" from Bürg surety, we get Bürgschaft; see Suf. 6, *a*.

^b Tyrann: see Ch. 3; by *tyrannos* the Greeks meant a Usurper merely, and the word had nothing to do with his *manner* of governing.

^c schllich: from schleichen (conn. with *sliek*, *sleek*, *slink*, *slouch*, *sly*, *sleight-of-hand*, etc.); see Ch. 6, *a*.

^d Gewand: see note ^j to "The Erlking."

^e schlügen: see note ^e to "The Young Hare"; schlagen to strike, refers here to the *riveting* of the chains.

^f Häschter: see Suf. 4, *a*.

^g Bande: see note ^a to "Knight Toggenburg" as far as "reaper." — From the Weak root of binden to *bind*, comes die Binde *bandage*; from the Strong root band *bound*, comes der Band *bond*, fetter.

„Was wolltest Du mit dem Dolche? sprich!“
 “What wouldest thou with the dagger? speak!”
 Entgegnet¹ ihm finster der Wütherich².
 Replied to-him gloomily the cruel-man.
 „Die Stadt^k vom Tyrannen befreien!“
 “The town from-the Tyrant to-free!”
 „Das sollst du am Kreuze bereuen!^l
 “That shalt thou on-the cross repent [rue].”

„Ich bin,“ spricht jener, „zu sterben^m bereit [Pr. 46],
 “I am,” says he [yon], “to die ready,
 Und bitte [see Ch. 2.] nicht um mein Leben;
 And beg not for my life;
 Doch willst Du Gnade mir geben —
 Yet [though] wilt thou grace to-me give —

^hwolltest: wollte would, is the Past tense of wollen to will; Lat. *volo, velle*; French *vouloir*. — Was wolltest Du? “what did you mean (to do)?” And Damon’s answer is: “(I meant) to free the town, &c.c.”

ⁱentgegne: from entgegen, from gegen *a-gainst*; see Ch. 10, b.

^jWütherich: see Suf. 4, a. — The Suffix -ich is added to a few Masculine Nouns; thus, a crane is *Kranich*, and a gander *Gänserich* (Genserich). It is probably Diminutive, like -oek in bull-oek, &c. — With rage, is conn. with the Old Engl. *wood* = mad.

^kStadt: here we have a whole family of words, all conn. with the Engl. *stay* and *stand*: stehen to stand; stand stood; Stand a state; bestehen to endure; Bestand constancy; Stunde an hour (compare a stint of work, and to stint); Statt, Stätte a place or stead; Statthalter stadholder, one who is in the king’s *stead*, (French *lieu-tenant*); statt, anstatt instead; stätig steady; stets constantly; Stadt a town or *stead* (as in Hampstead, Wanstead, etc.); Stab staff; steif, starr stiff, stark; starren to look stiffly, stare; stark strong; Stelze stilt; stolz (stilted) proud; Stolz pride; steigen (Old Engl. *sty*) to mount; Steg stile, steep path; etc., etc. — From the Latin root STA- we have *Staat* state; *Station* station; in like manner *stage*, *stable*, establish, constant, distant, etc.

^lbefreien, bereuen: see Pr. 1.

^msterben: to starve means, in some parts of England, to die of hunger, and in others to die of cold; in Old Engl. it simply meant to die: thus in Chaucer, “I hadde liever sterven wood” means “I had rather die mad.” See Ch. 17.

Ich flehe dich um drei Tageⁿ Zeit,
 I beseech [Scotch *fleach*] thee for three days' time,
 Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit^p —
 Till I my sister to-the husband (have) wedded —
 Ich lasse den Freund^p dir als Bürgen^q;
 I leave [*let*] my Friend to-thee as surety;
 Ihn magst du, entrinn' ich, erwürgen.^r
 Him mayst thou, escape I, strangle."

Da lächelt^t der König^u mit ärger Läßt,
 Then smiles the king with malicious [arch] cunning,
 Und spricht nach kurzem^v Bedenken^w:
 And speaks after short consideration:
 „Drei Tageⁿ will ich dir schenken;
 “Three days will I to-thee give;
 Doch, wisse, wenn sie verstrichen^x, die Frist,
 Yet, know, if it (has) run-out, the term (I mean),
 Eh' du zurück mir gegeben bist,
 Ere thou back to-me given art,
 So muß er statt^k deiner erblassen^y,
 So must he instead of-thee grow-pale,

ⁿ Drei Tage: for drei, see Ch. 1, *a*; for Tag, see Ch. 2, and 10, *b*.
^o Zeit: see note ^p to "The Minstrel."

^p gefreit: for freien and Freim^b, see note ^{bg} "Knight Toggenburg."

^q Bürg: see note ^{aa} to "The Pilgrim;" a surety protects you.

^r entrinnen: see Pr. 3, *a*; entrinne ich means "if I escape."

^s erwürgen: see Pr. 4, *a*.

^t lächeln: see Suf. 17, *a*; and note ⁿ to "The Erlking."

^u König: Anglo-S. *eyning*, Dutch *koning*, Swed. *konung*, Dan. *kong*. Some derive it from können can, be able: "He is called *Rex*, *Regulator*, *Roi*; our own name is still better: *King*, *Könning*, which means *Canning*, *Able-man*." — T. CARLYLE. — Others trace it to *Kin*, that is, *Kind*, *Kindred*; and make it mean the Child of the people.

^v kurz: see Ch. 4, *a*. — From *curt* we get *curtail* (French *courttailler* to cut short); Robert *Curt-hose*, etc.

^w Bedenken: see Pr. 1. — It is here used as a Noun; see note ⁿ to "The Pilgrim."

^x verstrichen: from *verstreichen*; see Pr. 10, *a*.

^y erblassen: see Pr. 4, *b*.

Doch dir ist die Strafe erlassen.^z
But to-thee is the punishment [stripe] let-off."

Und er kommt zum Freunde: "Der König^a gebeut^{aa},
And he comes to-the Friend: "The King commands,
Dass^{ab} ich am Kreuz' mit dem Leben
That I on-the cross with my life
Bezahlē^{ac} das^{ab} frevelnde Streben [Ch. 13];
Pay-for my criminal attempt;
Doch will er mir gönnen^{ad} drei Tage Zeit^o,
Yet will he to-me grant three days' time [tide].
Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit^p:
Till I my sister to-the husband (have) wedded:
So bleib' du dem König^u zum^{ae} Pfande [Ch. 12 & 3],
So remain thou to-the King as-a pledge [pawn],
Bis ich komme zu lösen^{af} die Bände^g:
Till I come to unloose thy bonds."

Und schweigend umarmt^{ag} ihn der treue^{ah} Freund
And silently embraces him the faithful Friend
Und liefert^{ai} sich aus^{ai} dem Thranen;
And delivers himself up to-the Tyrant;

^zerlassen: see Pr. 4, a. — For Strafe, see note ^{bi} to "Kn. Togg."

^{aa}gebeut: old and poetic for gebietet, from gebieten; see Pr. 5.

^{ab}dass and das: see Ch. 1, a, and 4, b.

^{ac}bezahle: from Zahl number [tale, see Ch. 4, a, as in "The tale of the bricks" — Exodus v. 8; a tally-man; to pay tallage or toll, etc.]; whence zählen to number, count or tell off; erzählen to recount or tell (a story); and zahlen to pay (because the money is counted out). — For bezahlen, see Pr. 1.

^{ad}gönnen: does not exactly mean grant or give, yet it means something more than allow; it is to allow willingly, gladly, not to grudge; whence mißgönnen to grudge (see Pr. 6); Gönner patron; and Gunst favour.

^{ae}zum: contr. from zu dem to the; so, in the Bible, "he took her to wife," meaning so as to be a wife.

^{af}lösen: from los loose.

^{ag}umarmen: see Pr. 8.

^{ah}treue: see note ^b to "Knight Toggenburg."

^{ai}liefert and aus: from austiefern; see Pr. 17, b.

Der Andere ziehet^{aj} von dannen.
 The Other travels from thence.
 Und ehe das dritte Morgenroth^{ak} scheint,
 And ere the third daybreak shines,
 Hat er schnell mit dem Gatten die Schwester vereint^{al},
 Has he quickly with the husband his sister united,
 Eilt^{am} heim^{am} mit sorgender^{an} Seele^{ao},
 Hastens home with anxious soul,
 Damit er die Frist nicht verfehle^{ap}.
 That [therewith, whereby] he the term not may-miss.

Da gießt^{aq} unendlicher^{ar} Regen^{as} herab^{aq},
 Then pours [gushes] endless rain down,
 Von den Bergen stürzen die Quellen,
 From the mountains tumble the springs [wells],
 Und die Bäche, die Ströme schwollen^{at},
 And the brooks [becks], (and) the rivers swell,
 Und er kommt an's^{au} Ufer mit wanderndem Stab^{av}, —
 And he comes to-the shore with wandering staff, —

^{aj} ziehet: from ziehen; see the Etymological Tree at the end of the Book.

^{ak} Morgenroth: *morning-red*, the red of morning.

^{al} vereinen: see Pr. 10, *c*; hence *Bereit union*; and *Zollverein* [*toll-union*] a *Union* formed by several German States to manage their *tolls* or custom-duties in common.

^{am} eilt and heim: from *heimeisen*; see Pr. 25.

^{an} sorgender: *sorgend* caring; from *sorgen* to care, whence also die *Sorge*, see Ch. 10, *b*, and note ^{hi} to “Knight Toggenburg.”

^{ao} Seele: see Ch. 18, *a*.

^{ap} verfehlen: see Pr. 10, *a*.

^{aq} gießt and herab: from *herabgießen*; see Pr. 30, and Diagram, page 67.

^{ar} unendlich: (from *endlich*, see Suf. 13, *a*); see Pr. 49.

^{as} Regen: see Ch. 10, *b*.

^{at} schwollen: see Ch. 6, *d*.

^{au} an's: contr. from *an daß*.

^{av} Stab: see note ^k; and Ch. 13.

Da^{aw} reiſet^{ax} die Brücke der Strudel hinab^{az},
 Then tears the bridge the whirlpool down,
 Und donnernd sprengen^{ay} die Wogen
 And thundering burst the waves
 Des Gewölbes^{az} frachenden^{ba} Bogen^{bb}.
 The vaulting's cracking arch [bow].

Und trostlos^{bc} irrt er an Ufers Rand^{bd};
 And disconsolate strays [errs] he on (the) shore's brink;

^{aw} Da—etc.: the meaning of this and the two following lines is: “Then the whirlpool tears the bridge down; and the waves, thundering, burst the cracking arch (that is, arches) of its vaulting.” — Der Strudel is the Nominative to reiſet, and die Wogen to sprengen; see note ^d to “Knight Toggenburg.”

^{ax} reiſet and hinab: from hinabreiſen; see Pr. 30, and Diagram, page 67.

^{ay} sprengen: from springen to spring:—

From	Is derived the CAUSATIVE Verb
springen to <i>spring</i>	sprengen to cause to <i>spring</i> ; to <i>spring</i> (a mine, a leak); to burst (something).
winden to <i>wind</i> (as a road or river)	wenden to cause to <i>wind</i> ; to <i>wend</i> or turn (something).
fallen to <i>fall</i>	fällen to <i>fell</i>
hangen to <i>hang</i> (as a picture hangs)	hängen to <i>hang</i> (as we hang a picture).
sinken to <i>sink</i> (as a ship sinks)	sinken to <i>sink</i> (as we sink a ship).
trinken to <i>drink</i>	tränken to cause to <i>drink</i> , to <i>drench</i> , to water (horses, etc.).
sitzen to <i>sit</i>	setzen to <i>set</i> .
liegen to <i>lie</i>	legen to <i>lay</i> .
wiegen to <i>weigh</i> (as a load weighs)	wägen to <i>weigh</i> (as we weigh a load).

We see by this List, that some Verbs, *by changing the root-vowel*, become Causative (and therefore Transitive).

N. B.—These Causative Verbs are always Regular.

^{az} Gewölbe: see Pr. 44, b.

^{ba} frachend: from frachen; see Ch. 9, a.

^{bb} Bogen: see Ch. 10, b.

^{bc} trostlos: see Suf. 14; and note ^b to “Knight Toggenburg.”

^{bd} Rand: see Ch. 3.

Wie ^{be} weit er auch ^{be} spähet ^{bf} und blicket,
 How far [wide] he soever spies and looks,
 Und die Stimme, die rufende, schicket,
 And the voice, the calling (voice), sends,
 Da stöhet fein Nachen ^{bg} vom ^{bh} sichern Strand,
 There pushes no boat from-the safe [secure] strand,
 Der ihn setze ^{bi} an das gewünschte Land,
 That him may-set on the wished-for land,
 Kein Schiffer ^{bj} lenket die Fähre ^{bk},
 No boatman guides the ferry,
 Und der wilde Strom wird ^{bl} zum Meere ^{bm}.
 And the wild river swells into-a sea.

Da sinkt er an's ^{au} Ufer und weint und fleht,
 There sinks he on-the shore and weeps and beseeches,
 Die Hände zum Zeus ^{bn} erhoben ^{bo}:
 His hands to-the Zeus uplifted:
 "O hemme des Stromes Toben!
 "O check [hem-in] the river's raging!
 Es eilen die Stunden ^{bp}, im Mittag ^{bq} steht
 There hasten the hours, at [in-the] mid-day stands
 Die Sonne, und wenn sie niedergeht ^{br},
 The sun, and if it goes-down,

^{be}wie and auch go together, and mean "how-ever."

^{bf}spähet: see note ⁱ to "The Castle by the Sea."

^{bg}Nachen: conn. with the Lat. *navis* ship, whence our *navy*, *naval*, *navigation*, etc.

^{bh}vom: contr. from von dem.

^{bi}setzen: see note ^{ay}.

^{bj}Schiffer: see Suf. 4, *b*; and Ch. 7, and 12.

^{bk}Fähre: see notes ^a and ^q to "The Erlking;" also note ^{bi} to "Knight Toggenburg."

^{bl}wird: see note ⁿ to "The Ass's Consolation."

^{bm}Meere: see note ^c to "The Castle by the Sea."

^{bn}Zeus: the Greek god corresponding to the Roman Jupiter.

^{bo}erheben: see Pr. 4, *a*. — For hebt, see Ch. 13.

^{bp}Es eilen die Stunden: see note ^v to "The Erlking."

^{bx}Mittag: see Ch. 2.

^{br}niedergehen: see Pr. 35.

Und ich kann die Stadt^k nicht erreichen^{bs},
 And I can the town not reach,
 So muß der Freund mir erbleichen^{bs}.^{tt}
 So must the Friend to-me die [turn-pale]."

Doch wachsend^{bt} erneut^{ba} sich des Stromes Wuth^j,
 But increasingly renews itself the river's rage,
 Und Welle auf Welle zerrinnet^{bu},
 And wave upon wave breaks,
 Und Stunde^{bv} an Stunde entrinnet^r;
 And hour after [on] hour slips-away;
 Da treibt^{bw} ihn die Angst^{bx}, da faßt^{by} er sich
 Then drives him (the) anguish, then takes he(to-himself)
 Mut^{bz},
 courage,

Und wirft^{ca} sich hinein^{ca} in die brausende Fluth^{cb},
 And throws himself in, into the roaring flood,
 Und theilt^{cc} mit gewaltigen^{cd} Armen
 And parts [deals] with powerful arms
 Den Strom — und ein Gott hat Erbarmen^{co}. —
 The stream — and a god has pity. —

^{bs} erreichen, erbleichen, erneuen: see Pr. 4, a, b, c.

^{bt} wachsen: to wax (as "the waxing moon"), to grow.

^{bu} zerrinnen: see Pr. 13.

^{bv} Stunde: see note ^k; the hours are halting-places in the day, like the stages in a journey. See note ^{bi} to "Knight Toggenburg."

^{bw} treiben: see Ch. 2, and 13.

^{bx} Angst: conn. with anxiety, anguish; the Lat. *angustus* narrow, pinching; and *angustia*, narrowness, strait, distress.

^{by} faßt: see note ^{aa} "The Erlking."

^{bz} Mut^{bz}: see note ^f to "The Ass's Consolation."

^{ca} wirft and hinein: from hineinwerfen; see Pr. 30, and Diagram, page 67.

^{cb} Fluth: see note ^{ae} to "The Pilgrim."

^{cc} theilen: see Ch. 2.

^{cd} gewaltig: see note ^z to "The Erlking;" and Suf. 11.

Und gewinnet [Pr. 5] das Ufer, und eilet fort
 And (he) gains [wins]. the shore, and hastens on,
 Und danket dem rettenden [Ch. 2] Gotte;
 And thanks the rescuing god;
 Da stürzet^{ee} die raubende Rotte
 Then bursts the robbing gang [rout]
 Hervor^{ee} aus des Waldes^{cf} nächtlichem^{eg} Ort^{ch},
 Forth out-of the forest's nightlike place,
 Den Pfad ihm sperrend^{ei}, und schnaubet Mord
 The path to-him barring, and breathes [snuffs] murder
 Und hemmet des Wanderers Eile [note ^{bi} to Kn. Togg.]
 And checks the traveller's haste
 Mit drohend geschwungener^{ej} Reuse.
 With threateningly brandished [swung] club.

„Was wollt ihr?“ ruft er vor Schrecken bleich [Ch. 9, a],
 „What would ye?“ cries he for terror pale,
 „Ich habe nichts^{ek} als mein Leben^{el},“
 „I have nothing but my life,
 Und das muß ich dem Könige geben^{el}!“ —
 And that must I to-the King give!“

^{ee} stürzt and hervor: from hervorstürzen; see Pr. 28.

^{cf} Wald: conn. with weald, wold, wood; and with wilb wild, etc.

^{eg} nächtlich: see Suf. 13, a.

^{ch} Ort: conn. with the Scotch airt, a direction or quarter of the heavens: —

“Of a' the airts the wind can blow,
 “I dearly love the West.” — BURNS.

^{ei} den Pfad ihm sperrend: “the path to-him barring” means “barring his path.” — The Dative case (*to me, to thee, to him, etc.*) is often used instead of the Possessive Pronoun (*my, thy, his, etc.*); as, “Ich habe mir den Arm zerbrochen I have *to-me* the arm broken,” instead of “I have broken *my* arm.” So in Latin, “Linguam ei præcidam, The-tongue *to-him* I-will-cut-off,” for “I will cut off *his* tongue” — PLAUTUS. — “Mitigati erant animi raptis, Soothed were the-minds *to-the-captive-women.*” for “*The-captive-women's* minds were soothed” — LIVY. — Sperren: conn. with spar, a bar or crossbeam.

^{ej} geschwungen: from schwingen; see Ch. 6, d.

^{ek} nichts: from the Old German icht aught; see Ch. 9, b.

^{el} Leben and geben: see Ch. 13.

Und entreißt^{em} die Keule dem nächsten gleich;
 And snatches the club (from) the nighest[*next*] quickly:
 „Um^{en} des Freundes willen^{en}, erbarmet euch^{ed}!“ —
 “For my Friend's sake, have mercy!” —
 Und drei mit gewaltigen^{ed} Streichen^{ep}
 And three with mighty blows
 Erlegt^{ea} er, die andern entweichen^{er}.
 Slays he, the others escape.

Und die Sonne versendet^{es} glühenden Brand^{et},
 And the sun sends-forth glowing fire,
 Und von der unendlichen^{ar} Mühe
 And with the infinite toil
 Ermattet^{eu}, sinken die Kniee:
 Worn-out, sink the knees:
 „O hast du mich gnädig^{ev} aus Räubershand^{ew},
 “Oh hast thou me graciously out-of robber's hand,
 Aus dem Strom^m mich errettet^{eu} an's heilige^{ex} Land,
 Out-of the stream me rescued to-the blessed [*holy*] land,

^{em}entreißen: see Pr. 3, a.

^{en}um and wissen: go together, meaning “for (some one's) will, pleasure or benefit.”

^{eo}erbarmet euch: from the Reflective Verb sich erbarmen. Barm in Old German meant tender; whence barmherzig tenderhearted, merciful; erbarmen to make tender (see Pr. 4, a); sich erbarmen to soften oneself, to take pity; and the Noun Erbarmen mercy.

^{op}Streich: a blow; from streichen; see Ch. 9, a, and 18, b.

^{eq}erlegen: see Pr. 4, a. — For legen, see note ^{ay}.

^{or}entweichen: see note ^c to “The Glow-worm;” and Pr. 3, a.

^{es}versenden: see Pr. 10, a.

^{et}Brand: a burning [brand, firebrand]; from brennen to burn; whence also Branntwein [burning-wine] brandy; braun brown, etc.

^{eu}ermatten and erretten: see Pr. 4, a. — For matt, see note ^h to “The Violet.”

^{ev}gnädig: see Suf. 11.

^{ew}Räuber: see Suf. 4, a. Rauben is conn. with the Lat. rap-snatch: whence rapid, rapine, rapture, Pope's “Rape of the Lock,” ravage, ravening, etc. Hence berauben bereave.

^{ex}heilig: see note ⁿ to “Knight Toggenburg.”

Und soll hier verschmachtend^{ey} verderben^{ey},
 And shall (I) here pining-away perish,
 Und der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben!"
 And the Friend to-me, the loving-one, die [starve]!"

Und horch [note ^{eg}]! da sprudelt^{ez} es silberhell,
 And hark! there bubbles it clear-as-silver,
 Ganz nahe, wie rieselndes^{ez} Rauschen;
 Quite nigh, like (a) purling rushing;
 Und stille hält^{da}. er zu lauschen,
 And silent [still] keeps he to listen,
 Und sieh', aus dem Felsen^{ab}, geschwätzige^{de}, schnell,
 And lo [see] out-of the rock, babbling, swift,
 Springt^{dd} murmelnd hervor^{da} ein lebendiger^{de}
 Springs murmuring forth a living

Quell

fountain [well],

Und freudig^{de} bückt^{af} er sich nieder^{af}
 And joyfully bows he himself down
 Und erfrischt^{dg} die brennenden^{et} Glieder.
 And refreshes his burning limbs.

Und die Sonne blickt durch der Zweige Grün^{dh}
 And the sun looks through the branches' [twigs'] green,
 Und malt auf den glänzenden Mäatten [Ch. 2]
 And paints on the gleaming [glinting] meadows

ey verschmachten and verderben: see Pr. 10, a.

ez sprudeln and rieseln: see Suf. 17, a.

da hält: from halten; see Ch. 15, and 2.

ab Fels: conn. with fell, in Scawfell, Snaefell, etc.

de geschwätzige: from Geschwätz; see Pr. 44, b; and Suf. 11.

dd springt and hervor: from hervorspringen; see Pr. 28.

de lebendig and freudig: see Suf. 11.

af bückt and nieder: from niederbilden; see Pr. 34. — For bücken see liegen, Ch. 10, b. and note ^{eg}.

dg erfrischen: see Pr. 4, e.

dh der Zweige Grün, and der Bäume gigantische Schatten: see note ak to "The Pilgrim." — The shadows are "gigantic," because the sun is low, and near setting.

Der Bäume gigantische Schatten^{dh}.
The trees' gigantic shadows.

Und zwei Wanderer sieht er die Straße^{di} ziehn,
And two travellers sees he the highway roam,
Will eilenden Laufes^{dj} vorüber fliehn,
Wishes (in) hastening course past (them) to-flee,
Da hört er die Worte sie sagen^{dk}:
Then hears he these words them say:
„Jetzt wird er an's Kreuz geschlagen^{dl}.“
“Now gets he to-the cross nailed.”

Und die Angst beflügelt^{dm} den eilenden Fuß,
And — anguish lends-wings-to his hastening foot,
Ihn jagen der Sorge^{an} Qualen;
Him chase — care's torments;
Da schimmern in Abendroths^{dn} Strahlen
There glimmer in (the) sunset's rays
Von ferne die Zinnen von Syrakus;
From far the pinnacles of Syracuse;

^{di} Straße: *street* (see Ch. 4, b), from the Lat. *strata via* a (*strown or*) paved way; whence our old Roman roads are still called Streets, as “Watling Street,” which runs from Chester to Dover.

^{dj} Lauf: a run, from *laufen* (see Ch. 12); so from the Lat. *currere* to run, comes *cursus* a *course*; im Lauf der Zeit in course of time.

^{dk} Da hört er die Worte sie sagen: means “Then he hears them say these words.”

^{dl} Jetzt wird er an's Kreuz geschlagen: means “Now he *is-being* nailed to the cross.” (Read note ⁿ to “The Ass's Consolation,” as far as “Development.”) — Now, because *werden* denotes a Process or Development, it is used as the Auxiliary for the *Future Tense*, and also for the *Passive Voice*. So we have:—

Er wird schlagen = (he *is-getting* or *going to beat*), he *will* beat.

Er wird geschlagen = (he *is-getting* beaten), he *is-being* beaten.
But, Er ist geschlagen = (he *is* beaten, that is), he *has-been* beaten.

Geschlagen is from *schlagen*, see note ^e; both there and here it refers to the act of *striking*, there of riveting the chains, here of driving the nails through the hands and feet.

^{dm} beflügeln: see Pr. 1. — For *Flügel*, see note ^{ac} to “The Pilgrim.”

^{dn} Abendroth: *evening-red*, the red of evening; see note ^{ak}.

Und entgegen-kommt^{do} ihm Philostratus,
 And (there) meets him Philostratus,
 Des Hauses redlicher Hüther^{dp},
 His [the] house's honest keeper [heeder],
 Der erkennet^{da} entsezt^{dr} den Gebieter^{ds}.
 He recognizes horror-struck his master.

"Zurück, du rettest den Freund nicht mehr^{dt},
 "Back, thou savest the Friend no more,
 So rette das eigene^{dn} Leben!
 So save thy [the] own life!
 Den Tod^{dv} erleidet^{dw} er eben.
 —— Death suffers he even (now).
 Von Stunde^{by} zu Stunde gewartet^{dx} er
 From hour to hour awaited he
 Mit hoffender Seele^{dt} der Wiederkehr^{dy};
 With hoping soul thy return;
 Ihm konnte den mutigen Glauben^{dz}
 (From) him could his brave faith
 Der Hohn des Tyrannen nicht rauben^{dz}."
 The scoff of-the Tyrant not snatch [rob]."

^{do} entgegenkommen: see Pr. 23.

^{dp} Hüther: see Suf. 4, a. The original meaning of *hüthen* (see Ch. 2) was to *hide* or shelter; hence *Hütte* hut, *Hut* [hood] hat, *Haut*-hide, skin; &c.

^{da} erkennen: see Pr. 4, c. For *kennen*, see note ^b to "Mignon."

^{dr} entsezt: see Pr. 3, a.

^{ds} Gebieter: (from *gebieten*, Pr. 5), see Suf. 4, a.

^{dt} mehr and Seele: see Ch. 18, a.

^{du} eigen: see Ch. 18, b; and 10, b.

^{dv} Tod: see Ch. 2; and 1, a; and 16, c.

^{dw} erleiden: see Pr. 4, b.

^{dx} gewartete: from *gewarten*, see Pr. 5; and note ^p to "The Erl-king." — Compare the *ward* of a lock; a *guardian* and his *ward*; *warder*, *church-warden* etc.

^{dy} Wiederkehr: from *wiederkehren*; see Pr. 41.

^{dz} Ihm — rauben: the meaning of these two lines is, "The Tyrant's jeer could not rob him of his undaunted faith (in his friend)." — For *mutig*, see Suf. 11; and note ^f to "The Ass's Consolation."

„Und ist es zu spät, und kann ich ihm nicht^{ek}
 „And is it too late, and can I to-him not
 Ein Retter [Suf. 4, a] willkommen^{ea} erscheinen^{eb},
 A deliverer welcome appear,
 So soll mich der Tod^{dv} ihm vereinen^{al}.
 So shall me — death to-him unite.
 Deß^{ec} rühme der blut'ge^{ed} Tyrann sich nicht,
 Of-this boast the bloody Tyrant (himself) not,
 Daß der Freund dem Freunde gebrochen^{ee} die
 That the Friend to-the Friend (has) broken the
 Pflicht^{ef};
 pledge;
 Er schlachte^{eg} der Opfer^{eh} zweie^{ei},
 Let-him-slaughter (of-the) victims two,

^{ea} willkommen: for wohlkommen, from wohl well, and gekommen come.

^{eb} erscheinen: see Pr. 4, b.

^{ec} deß: contr. from dessen, the Possessive case of der, when used as a Demonstrative Pronoun.

^{ed} blut'ge: for blutige, see Suf. 11. — The whole line means, “Let not the bloody Tyrant boast of this.” — Sich rühmen [from Ruhm glory, fame; conn. with *rumour*] is a Reflective Verb, as our “boast” formerly was: “Boast not thyself of tomorrow” — Proverbs XXVII. 1.

^{ee} gebrochen: from brechen (see Ch. 9, a); here it stands for gebrochen hat. — N.B. When the Auxiliary habe, hast, hat, comes after the Past Participle, it is often omitted.

^{ef} Pflicht: see Ch. 12; and 8; and 9, b.

^{eg} schlachten: from schlagen: —

From	Comes the STRENGTHENED Verb
schlagen [slay] strike	schlachten to slaughter, to butcher.
tragen [draw] carry	trachten to treat, try or strive for.
fliehen flee	sich flüchten take flight, escape.
ziehen tow, pull	zücken tug, twitch, shrug.
biegen to bow, bend	bücken stoop, bend the back.
hängen hang	henken hang (a criminal).
hegen to foster, cherish	hecken to hatch.
hören hear	horchen hearken, hark.
stehen stand	steigen mount, climb.

N.B. — These Strengthened Verbs are mostly Regular.

^{eh} Opfer: from the Lat. ob-ferre to offer, whence offering, offertory, etc. — In German, as in English, most words referring to RELIGIOUS

Und glaube an Liebe^{ej} und Treue^{ek}!"
 And believe in Love and Faithfulness [truth]."

Und die Sonne geht^{el} unter^{el} — da steht er am
 And the sun goes down — then stands he at-the
 Thor
 gate [door]

Und sieht das Kreuz schon erhöhet^{em},
 And sees the cross already [soon] reared,
 Das die Menge^{en} gaffend [Ch. 12] umstehet^{eo};
 Which the multitude gaping surrounds;
 An dem Seile schon zieht^{ep} man den Freund empor^{ep},
 On the rope already draw they his Friend aloft,
 Da zertrennt^{eq} er gewaltig^{ed} den dichten^{er} Chor:
 Then divides he forcibly the dense crowd:
 "Mich, Henker^{es}," ruft er, "erbürget!"
 "Me, hangmen," cries he, "slaughter!
 Da bin ich, für den er gebürget^{et}."
 Here am I, for whom he stood-surety."

RITES were introduced by the Romish Church, and are therefore of LATIN or GREEK origin; as Opfer, Pilgrim, Kloster, Feier, Kreuz, Fest, Altar, Kelch, &c., all Latin; and Priester, Bischof, Mönch, Münster, &c., all Greek.

^{ei} zweie: from zwei; see Ch. 4, a, and 18, b.

^{ej} Liebe: see Ch. 18, c, and 13; also note ^{bi} to "Kn. Togg."

^{ek} Treue: see note ^b to "Knight Togenburg"; and Suf. 2.

^{el} geht and unter: from untergehen; (see Pr. 38); when said of mortals, it means "to perish," but of the heavenly bodies "to set."

^{em} erhöhen: see Pr. 4, a.

^{en} Menge: conn. with ming-le, a-mong, mong-rel, iron-mong-er, &c. Probably from manq (mannig) many; as multitude from Lat. multus many. See Suf. 2.

^{eo} umstehen: see Pr. 8.

^{ep} zieht and empor: from emporziehen; see Pr. 22.

^{ed} zertrennen: see Pr. 13.

^{er} dicht: see Ch. 1, a; and 9, a.

^{es} Henker: see Suf. 4, a. — Henken from hängen, see notes ay and ^{eg}. Our hang has all the three meanings of hängen, hängen, henken.

^{et} gebürget: (for gebürget hat has stood-surety, see note ^{ee}, "N. B."), from bürgen to be surety; see note ^{aa} to "The Pilgrim."

Und Erstaunen^{eu} ergreift^{ev} das Volk umher;
 And astonishment seizes the people [folk] around;
 In den Armen liegen sich Beide^{ew},
 In the arms lie to-each-other the-Two [both],
 Und weinen vor Schmerzen^{fe} und Freude^{ex}.
 And weep for sorrow [smart] and joy.
 Da sieht man kein Auge thränенleer^{ey},
 There sees one no eye void-of-tears,
 Und zum Königen^u bringt man die Wundermähr;
 And to-the King brings one the wonderful-story;
 Der fühlt ein menschliches^{ez} Rühren,
 He feels a humane touch,
 Läßt^{fa} schnell vor den Thron sie führen^{fa} —
 Lets quickly before the throne them be-led —

Und blickt^{fb} sie lange verwundernd^{fe} an^{fu};
 And looks-at them a-long-while wondering —;
 Drauf spricht er: "Es ist euch gelungen^{fd},
 Thereupon speaks he: "It has [is] to-you prospered,
 Ihr habt das Herz mir^{fe} bezwungen^{ff},
 Ye have the heart to-me subdued,

^{eu} Erstaumen: see note ^a to "The Minstrel," and Pr. 4, b.

^{ev} ergreifen: see Pr. 4, a. — For greifen, see Ch. 12.

^{ew} In — Beide: "The Two lie in the arms to each other"; means "The Two (friends) are clasped in one another's arms"; see note ^{ci}.

^{ex} Freude: see note ^{bg} to "Knight Toggenburg"; and Pr. 44, b, "N. B."

^{ey} thränensleer: from Thräne a tear, and leer [lear] empty.

^{ez} menschlich: see Suf. 13, a; and note ^j to "The Ass's Consolation."

^{fa} Läßt sie führen: "lets them lead"; that is, "causes (some one) to lead them"; so the French faire conduire, etc. — For führen see note ^a to "The Erlking."

^{fb} blickt and an: from anblicken; see Pr. 15.

^{fe} verwundern: see Pr. 10, c.

^{fd} Es ist euch gelungen: means "Ye have succeeded." — Gelungen, from gelingen; see Pr. 5.

^{ff} Herz and Schmerz: see Ch. 17, and 4, a. "The heart to me," means "my heart"; see note ^{ci}.

^{ff} bezwungen: from bezwingen; see Pr. 1. — For zwingen, see Ch. 4, a, and 8: whence Zwinger a fortified prison, also a cage for wild beasts on the arena of an amphitheatre.

Und die Treue sie ist doch^{fg} kein leerer Wahñ,
 And—Faithfulness [*truth*] it is after-all no empty delusion,
 So nehmetth auch^{fi} mich zum Genosßen anth;
 So accept also me for a partner —;
 Ich-sei, (gewährt^{uj} mir die Bitte),
 Be-I, (grant me the request),
 In eurem Bunde^{rk} der Dritte^{n.}
 In your league [band] the Third.“

SCHILLER.

Der Handschuh. THE GLOVE [*hand-shoe*].

Vor seinem Löwengarten^a,
 Before his menagerie [*lion-garden*],
 Das Kampfspiel^b zu erwarten^c,
 The combat to await,

^{fg} doch: see Ch. 1, *a*, and 9, *b*.

th nehmet and an: from *annehmen*; see Pr. 15. — Compare the English *accept*, from the Latin *ad* to, and *cep-* or *cep-* take.

^{fi} auch: see Ch. 16, *b*, and 9, *a*.

^{uj} gewähren: see Pr. 5. — For *Bitte*, see note ^{bi} to “Kn. Togg.”

^{rk} BUND: many **Maseuline** (and some **Neuter**) Nouns are formed of the mere root of a Verb, as *der Tanz* from *tanzen* to dance; so **Mase.**, *Strahl*, p. 115, *Lohn*, p. 141, *Schein*, *Lauf*, *Blid*, *Danf*; **Neut.**, *Bild*, p. 117, *Spiel*, *Kleid*, *Grab*, *Lob*. — When a *Strong* root of a Verb forms the Noun, this is almost sure to be **Mase.**, as *Trank* and *Trumf* fr. *trinken*, p. 142, *Baud* and *Bund* fr. *binden*, *Spruch* fr. *sprechen*, *Fluß* fr. *fließen*, *Sprung* fr. *springen*, *Zug* fr. *ziehen*; but **Neut.**, *Schloß* fr. *schließen*, p. 113.

[“] Ich sei — der Dritte: the two lines mean, “Grant me this request, let me be the Third in your fellowship.” — Dritte: from *drei* three; so zweite second, from *zwei* two; vierte fourth, etc.

^a Löwengarten: from Löwe *lion*, and Garten *garden*; hence Zoolo-gical Garden, Menagerie.

^b Kampfspiel: fighting-game; from *Kampf* [*camp, champion*] fight and das *Spiel* play, game; see note ^{fk} to “The Pledge.”

^c erwarten: see Pr. 4, *a*; and note ^{dx} to “The Pledge.”

Saß König Franz,
 Sat king Francis,
 Und um ihn die Großen^a der Krone,
 And about him the grandes of-the crown,
 Und rings^e auf hohem Balkone
 And around on (a) high balcony
 Die Damen^f in schönem Kranz.
 The Ladies in (a) beautiful wreath (that is, circle).

Und wie er winkt mit dem Finger,
 And (as soon) as he beckons [*winks*] with the finger,
 Auf-thut^g sich der weite Zwinger^h,
 Opens itself the wide cage,
 Und hineinⁱ, mit bedächtigem^j Schritt,
 And in, with sober stride,
 Ein Löwe trittⁱ;
 A Lion steps [*treads*];
 Und sieht sich^k stumm
 And looks about him dumbly
 Rings^e um^k,
 Around —,
 Mit langem Gähnen^l,
 With (a) long [Ch. 15] yawn,

^a Großen: great (ones), from groß; see Ch. 16, c, and 4, b.

^e rings: [ringwise] all round; from Ring a ring.

^f Damen: see note ^l to "The Minstrel."

^g auf and thut: from aufsthun; see note ^{ag} to "Knight Toggenburg."

^h Zwinger: see note ^{ff} to "The Pledge." — Schiller, in his *William Tell*, uses both Zwing and Twing for a fort; the one is High German, the other Low German, and more like the English. Low German was the language of North Germany, and English is a branch of it.

ⁱ hinein and tritt: from hineintreten; see Pr. 30, and Diagram, page 67.

^j bedächtig: see Suf. 11. — Bedacht is from denken, see Ch. 9, b; and bedenken, see Pr. 1.

^k sieht sich and um: go together, from (sich) umsehen; see Pr. 37.

^l Gähnen: see Ch. 10, a and b; also note ⁿ to "The Pilgrim."

Und schüttelt^m die Mähnen,
And shakes his mane,
Und strecket^v die Glieder,
And stretches his limbs,
Und legtⁿ sich niederⁿ.
And lays himself down.

Und der König windt wieder —
And the king beckons again —
Da öffnet^o sich behend [Pr. 46]
Then opens (itself) swiftly
Ein zweites^p Thor;
A second gate [*door*];
Daraus^q rennt^r
Out-of-it [*there-out*] runs
Mit wildem Sprunge [note ^{rk} to "Pledge"]
With wild spring
Ein Tiger hervor^r.
A Tiger forth.
Wie der den Löwen erschaut^s,
(As soon) as he the Lion beholds,
Brüllt er laut,
Roars [Scotch *brools*] he loud,
Schlägt^t mit dem Schweif
Strikes with his tail [*sweep*]

^m schütteln: see Suf. 17, a.

ⁿ legt and nieder: from *niederlegen*; see Pr. 35; and note ^{ay} to "The Pledge."

^o öffnet: from the Adjective *offen* (*open*) (see Ch. 12; and note ^{ag} to "Knight Toggenburg") comes the Verb *öffnen*, contr. into *schließen*, to *open*.

^p zweite: see note ^{f1} to "The Pledge."

^q daraus: from *dar* (see Ch. 1, a), and *aus*, see Ch. 4, b.

^r rennt and hervor: from *hervorrennen*; see Pr. 28.

^s erschauen: see Pr. 4, a.

^t schlagen: see note ^e to "The Young Hare."

Einen furchtbaren^u Reif,
A dreadful ring,
Und recket^v die Zunge^w,
And reaches-out his tongue,
Und im Kreise scheu
And in-a [in-the] circle warily [shy]
Umgeht^x er den Leu^y,
He-walks-round the Lion,
Grimmig^z schnurrend [Ch. 6, c];
Grimly snarling;
Drauf^{aa} streckt^{ab} er sich murrend
Thereupon stretches he himself growling [murmuring,
Zur^{ac} Seite nieder^{ab}.
At-his side down.

Und der König winkt wieder —
And the king beckons again —
Da speit^{ad} das doppelt^{ae} geöffnete^{af} Haus
Then disgorges the doubly opened house
Zwei Leoparden auf Einmal^{ag} aus^{ad}.
Two Leopards at once —.

^u furchtbar: see Suf. 7, a.

^v strecken and recken: see Ch. 8.

^w Zunge: see Ch. 4, a.

^x umgehen: see Pr. 8. — For gehen, see Ch. 18, a.

^y Leu: old and poetic for Löwe.

^z grimmig: see Suf. 11.

^{aa} drauf: contr. from darauf.

^{ab} streckt and nieder: from niederstrecken: see Pr. 35.

^{ac} zur: contr. from zu der to the; see note ^k to "Knight Toggenburg."

^{ad} speit and aus: from ausspeien; see Pr. 15, a.

^{ae} doppelt: see Ch. 3. — From the Lat. *duo* two, and *plic*-fold, comes *duplicate*, *duplicity*, *doppelst*, and *double*.

^{af} geöffnet: Past Participle of öffnen; see note ^o.

^{ag} auf Einmal: [upon one-time], see note ^m to "The Pilgrim."

Die stürzen mit muthiger^{ah} Kampfbegier^{ai}
These fall with bold combativeness

Auf das Tigerthier^{aj};
Upon the Tiger-beast;

Das packt sie mit seinen grimmigen^z Fäten,
He clutches them with his grim paws,

Und der Leu^y mit Gebrüll^{ak}
And the Lion with (a) roar

Richtet^{ai} sich auf^{al}, — da wird's^{am} still;
Raises himself up, — then grows it still;

Und herum^{ap} im Kreis,
And around in-a circle,

Von Mordsucht^{an} heiß^{ao},
From bloodthirst hot,

Lagern sich^{ap} die gräulichen^{aq} Käthen [Ch. 4, a].
Couch themselves the grizzly cats.

^{ah}muthig: see Suf. 11.

^{ai}Kampfbegier: from Kampf fight, and Begier desire; “desire of fighting.” — Begier from begehrēn, see Pr. 1. — The root gehr is conn. with the Lat. quær-, quir-, whence query, require, inquire, etc.

^{aj}Tigerthier: for Thier, see note^s to “Mignon.” Shakspeare speaks of “rats and mice and such small deer.”

^{ak}Gebrüll: see Pr. 44.

^{al}richtet and auf: from aufrichten; see Pr. 16, a.

^{am}wird's: contr. from wird es; see noteⁿ to “The Ass's Consolation.”

^{an}Mord-sucht: *murder-sickness*. So, Heimsucht *home-sickness*; Ehr-sucht [honour-sickness] ambition; Eifersucht [zeal-sickness] jealousy; Lungensucht lung-disease. — Sucht comes from steh; see Ch. 9, a.

^{ao}heiß: see Ch. 18, b, and 4, b; “hot with bloodthirstiness.”

^{ap}lagern sich and herum; from (sich) herumslagern; see Pr. 27. From liegen (see Ch. 10, b) comes also Lager *leaguer* or camp, *layer*, *lair*; whence belagern to *beleaguer* or besiege.

^{aq}gräulich: see Suf. 13, a and b. — Here it does not refer to the colour, but means “horrid.”

Da fällt^{ar} von des Altans^{as} Rand^{at}
 There falls from the gallery's edge
 Ein Handschuh von schöner Hand
 A Glove from (a) fair hand
 Zwischen^{au} den Tiger und den Löwen^{av}
 Betwixt the Tiger and the Lion
 Mitten^{aw} hinein^{ar}.
 Midway in.

Und zu Ritter^{ax} Delorges, spottender Weiß,
 And to knight Delorges, (in a) mocking way [*wise*],
 Wendet^{ay} sich Fräulein^{az} Kunigund:
 Turns herself Lady Cunigunda:
 „Herr Ritter, ist Eure Lieb' so heiß^{ao},
 „Sir knight, is your love so hot,
 Wie Ihr mir's^{ba} schwört zu jeder Stund',
 As you to-me swear (at) every hour,
 Ei, so habt^{bb} mir den Handschuh auf^{bb}!“
 Oh, then pick me the Glove up!"

Und der Ritter,^{ax} in schnellem Lauf,^{bc}
 And the knight in swift run,

^{ar}fällt and hinein: from hineinfallen; see Pr. 30; and Diagram, page 67.

^{as}Altan: elevated place, from the Lat. *altus* high; whence the Lat. *altare*, Altar an *altar*, that is, an elevated table for the gods; also, *altitude*, *exalt*, etc.

^{at}Rand: see Ch. 3.

^{au}zwischen: (see Ch. 7), from *zwei* *two*, hence *be-between*, that is, *by-the-twain*. Read the quotation from Chaucer on p. 9.

^{av}Lönn: the Accusative case of Löu; see note ^y.

^{aw}mitten: from Mitte; see Ch. 2.

^{ax}Ritter: see note ^a to "Knight Toggenburg."

^{ay}wenden: see note ^{ay} to "The Pledge."

^{az}Fräulein: see Suf. 1. — A title given only to young *ladies*; while Jungfer, a corruption of Jungfrau, is bestowed on *maid-servants* and the like.

^{ba}mir's: contr. from mir es to-me it.

^{bb}habt and auf: from aufheben; see Pr. 16, *a*.

^{bc}Lauf: see notes ^{dj} and ^{fk} to "The Pledge."

Steigt hinab^{bd} in den furchtbar'n^u Zwinger^h
Descends into the fearful arena

Mit festem Schritte,
With firm [fast, steadfast] step [stride],

Und aus der Ungeheuer Mitte^{be}
And out-of the monsters' midst

Nimmt er den Handschuh mit keckem Finger.
Takes he the Glove with hardy finger.

Und mit Erstaunen^{bf} und mit Grauen^{bg}
And with astonishment and with horror

Sehen's die Ritter^{ax} und Edelfrauen^{bh};
See it the knights and noble-ladies;

Und gelassen^{bi} bringt^{bj} er den Handschuh zurück^{bj}.
And calmly brings he the Glove back.

Da schallt ihm sein Lob^{bo} aus jedem Munde;
Then sounds to-him his praise out-of every mouth;

Aber mit zärtlichem Liebesblick^{bo},
But with tender look-of-love,

Er verheißt^{bk} ihm sein nahes Glück,
It promises to-him his approaching [nigh] bliss[luck],

^{bd}steigt and hinab: from hinabsteigen; see Pr. 30 and Diagram, page 67. — So descend, from the Lat. *de* down, and *scand-* climb.

^{be}aus der Ungeheuer Mitte: "from the midst of the monsters."

— For Ungeheuer, see Pr. 49.

^{bf}Erstaunen: see note ^a to "The Minstrel"; and Pr. 4, b.

^{bg}Grauen: compare note ^{an}. — Here Erstaunen and Grauen are both Nouns; see note ⁿ to "The Pilgrim."

^{bh}Edelfrau: from edel noble (see Ch. 1, a), and Frau lady; so, Edelmann nobleman; der Adel the nobility, etc.

^{bi}gelassen: Past Participle of lassen to let; hence it means, "let loose, free, unembarrassed."

^{bj}bringt and zurück: from zurückbringen; see Pr. 43.

^{bk}verheißen: see Pr. 10, a. — Heißen is conn. with hight, hest, behest, etc.: —

Wie das Gestirn,	"Like as a Star,
Ohne Hast,	"That maketh not haste,
Aber ohne Rast,	"That taketh not rest,
Drehe sich jeder	"Be each one fulfilling
Um die eigene Last!	"His God-given hest!"'

GOETHE, translated by T. CARLYLE.

Empfängt^{b1} ihn Fräulein Cunigunde.
Receives him Lady Cunigunda.
Und er wirft^{bm} ihr^{bn} den Handschuh in's Gesicht^{bn}:
And he throws her the Glove in the face:
„Den Dank^{bo}, Dame, begehr^{ai} ich nicht!“ —
“Such thanks, Lady, require I not!” —
Und verläßt^{bp} sie zur selben^{ba} Stunde.
And forsakes her at-the self-same hour.

SCHILLER.

Die Frösche.

THE FROGS.

Ein großer Teich war zugefroren^a;
A great pond [Ch. 8] was frozen-over;
Die Fröschlein, in der Tiefe verloren,
The froglings [Suf. 1], in the depth [Suf. 2] lost,
Durften nicht ferner quacken noch springen,
Could [durst] not [Ch. 9, b] further croak nor leap,
Versprachen^b sich aber, im halben Traum,
Promised to themselves however, in (the) half dream,
Fänden sie nur^c da oben Raum,
Found they but there above [Ch. 13] room,

^{b1}empfangen: from fangen to catch, to lay hold of; conn. with fang and finger.

^{bm}wirft: from werfen; see Ch. 17, and 12.

^{bn}ihr in's Gesicht: “to-her in the face”; see note ^{ci} to “The Pledge.” — For Gesicht, see note ^{fk} to “The Erlking.”

^{bo}Lob, Blick, Dank: see note ^{fk} to “The Pledge,” as far as Lob.

^{bp}verlassen: see Pr. 10, *a*.

^{ba}selb: see Ch. 13. — Shakspeare uses “that self day” for “the same day.”

^azugefroren: from zufrieren, see Pr. 42, *b*. Verloren: from verlieren, see Pr. 10, *a*. — For frieren and lieren, see Ch. 5, *b*. Milton uses “frore” for frozen.

^bversprechen: see Pr. 10, *a*.

^cfänden sie nur, etc.: means “If they but found a place up there.”

Wie Nachtigallen^a wollten sie singen.

Like nightingales would they sing.

Der Thauwind kam, das Eis zerschmolz,^b
The thaw-wind came, the ice melted-asunder,

Nun ruderten sie, und landeten stolz,
Now paddled [rudder, row] they, and landed proudly,

Und saßen am Ufer weit und breit,
And sat on-the bank far [wide] and wide [broad],

Und quackten wie vor alter Zeit.^c

And croaked as in [before] olden time [tide].

GOETHE.

^a Nachtigall: from Nacht night, and the Old German and Anglo-S. galan to sing. From the same root *gal* comes *madrigal*, a pastoral song.

^b zerschmelzen: see Pr. 13. For schmelzen see Ch. 6, b. — N.B. — Many Verb-roots are **Strengthened** by putting *S* or *Seh* before them. Thus sch-melzen *s-melt* is a strengthened form of melt; s-perren *s-par*, of bar; s-terben *s-starve*, of starben; s-chreien, of cry; s-challen, of hallen, lines 2 and 4 of "The Minstrel." And so S-chloß a castle, and Kloster a convent, are only two forms of the same root (Germ. *s-chloss* = Lat. *claus*). In the Slavonic tongues (Russian, Polish, &c.) this *S* is not only a prefix, but a word.

^c vor alter Zeit: means "formerly."

N.B. — The next two poems are to be prepared by help of the Translation on the opposite page, and of the Foot-notes. When read off to the Teacher, it is intended that the Translation should be kept covered.

Das Glück von Edenhall.

Von Edenhall der junge Lord
 Läuft schmettern^a Festtrommetenschall,
 Er hebt sich an des Tisches Bord
 Und ruft in trunkner Gäste Schwall^b:
 „Nun her mit dem Glück von Edenhall!“

Der Schenk vernimmt ungern^c den Spruch,
 Des Hauses ältester Vasall,
 Nimmt zögernd^d aus dem seidenen^e Tuch
 Das hohe Trinkglas von Krystall,
 Sie nennen's: „Das Glück von Edenhall.“

Darauf der Lord: „Dem Glas zum Preis^f
 Schenkt^g rothen ein^h aus Portugall!“
 Mit Händezittern gießt [gushes, pours] der Greis;
 Und purpur Licht wirdⁱ überall,
 Es strahlt aus dem Glücke von Edenhall.

Da spricht der Lord und schwingt's dabei [thereby, mean-
 „Dies Glas von leuchtendem Krystall while]:
 Gab meinem Ahn am Quell^j die Fei [say, fairy];
 Drein schrieb sie: Kommt dies Glas zu Fall^k,
 Fahr wohl dann, o Glück von Edenhall:

^a schmettern: see note ^a to "The Butterfly and the Bee"; — "The shattering trumpet shrilleth high" — TENNYSON.

^b trunkner Gäste Schwall: see note ^{ak} to "The Pilgrim." — Schwall: heaving mass, tumultuous crowd (conn. with schwollen to swell, as tumult with tumeo). It is a Strenghtened form of wälzen to wave or heave up and down, used on p. 114, line 11, for the waving of the sea, and on p. 120, line 15, for the long waving line of Crusaders marching.

THE LUCK OF EDENHALL.

Of Edenhall the youthful lord
 Bids sound the festal trumpet's call,
 He rises at the banquet board,
 And cries 'mid the drunken revellers all,
 "Now bring me the Luck of Edenhall!"

The Butler hears the words with pain,
 The house's oldest seneschal,
 Takes slow from its silken cloth again
 The drinking-glass of crystal tall;
 They call it The Luck of Edenhall.

Then said the lord: "This glass to praise,
 Fill with red wine from Portugal!"
 The greybeard with trembling hand obeys;
 A purple light shines over all,
 It beams from the Luck of Edenhall.

Then speaks the lord, and waves it light;
 "This glass of flashing crystal tall
 Gave to my sire the Fountain-Sprite;
 She wrote in it: *If this glass doth fall,*
Fare well then, O Luck of Edenhall!

^cvernehmen: see note ⁿ to "The Castle by the Sea."

^dungern: see Pr. 49; gern from gehren, see note ^{ai}, p. 163.

^eggern: see Suf. 17, *a*; and Etymological Tree Ziehen.

^fseiden: see Suf. 8.

^geinschenken and einstürmen: see Pr. 21, *a*.

^hwerden: see note ⁿ to "The Ass's Consolation."

„Ein Kelchglas ward zum Loos mit Zug¹
Dem freud'gen Stamm von Edenhall;
Wir schlürfen gern^a in vollem Zug^j,
Wir läuten gern mit lautem [loud] Schall [Ch. 7];
Stoßt^k an^k mit dem Glück^l von Edenhall.“

Erst klingt es milde, tief und voll,
Gleich^l dem Gesang^l der Nachtigall,
Dann wie des Waldstroms laut Geroll^l,
Zuletzt erdröhnt^m wie Donnerhallⁿ
Das herrliche Glück von Edenhall.

„Zum Horte nimmt ein kühn [keen] Geschlecht
Sich den zerbrechlichen Krystall;
Es dauert [en-dures] länger schon als recht;
Stoßt an! Mit diesem kräftigen^o Prall
Versuch^p ich das Glück von Edenhall.“

Und als das Trinkglas gellend [Ch. 10, b] springt,
Springt das Gewölb¹ mit jähem Knall,
Und aus dem Riß die Flamme dringt [Ch. 1, a];
Die Gäste sind zerstoben^q all
Mit dem brechenden Glücke von Edenhall.

Ein^s stürmt^s der Feind mit Brand und Mord,
Der in der Nacht erstieg^r den Wall,
Vom Schwerte fällt der junge Lord,

¹ Ein — Zug: literally, “A goblet became the lot with justice.” — Kelch: from the Lat. *calix*, a *chalice*; see note ^{eh} to “The Pledge.” — Zum: see note ^{ae} to “The Pledge.” — Loos: see Ch. 4, b. — Zug: right, authority; perhaps conn. with the Lat. *fung-* to bear or discharge an office, whence our *function*, *defunct*, etc.

^j Zug: Ziehen, and note ^{fk} to “The Pledge.” see Etymological Tree.

^k anstoßen: see Pr. 14.

^l Glück (or Gelüdf), Gesang, Geroll, Gewölbe: see Pr. 44, b. — Gleich (or gelich), see Pr. 48. — While the prefix *Ge-* has disappeared in English, it has on the contrary become so much a

"T was right a goblet the Fate should be
 Of the joyous race of Edenhall!
 Deep draughts drink we right willingly;
 And willingly ring with merry call,
 Kling! clang! to the Luck of Edenhall!"

First rings it deep, and full, and mild,
 Like to the song of nightingale;
 Then like the roar of a torrent wild;
 Then mutters at last like thunder's fall,
 The glorious Luck of Edenhall.

"For its keeper takes a race of might
 The fragile goblet of crystal tall;
 It has lasted longer than is right;
 Kling! clang! With a harder blow than all
 Will I try the Luck of Edenhall."

As the goblet ringing flies apart,
 Suddenly cracks the vaulted hall;
 And through the rift the wild flames start;
 The guests in dust are scattered all,
 With the breaking Luck of Edenhall.

In storms the foe, with fire and sword,
 He in the night had scaled the wall;
 Slain by the sword lies the youthful lord,

*part of the root in many German words, that they are no longer found without it: whether Nouns, as *G-lüd luck*; or Adjectives, as *g-leich like*; or Verbs, as *ge-winnen to win*.*

^m *erdröhnen*: see Pr. 4, a.

ⁿ *Donner*: see Ch. 1, a, and 3. — *Hall*: conn. with *halloo*, etc.

^o *kräftig*: from *Kraft* strength; see Suf. 11.

^p *versuchen*: to try, tempt; from *suchen seek*.

^q *zerstieben, zer springen, zer stören*: see Pr. 13.

^r *ersteigen*: see Pr. 4, a. — For *steigen*, see note ^r to "Mignon."

Hält in der Hand noch den Krystall,
Das zersprungene^a Glück von Edenhall.

Am Morgen irrt [errs, strays] der Schenk^b allein,
Der Greis in der zerstörten^c Halle,
Er sucht des Herrn verbrannt Gebein^d;
Er sucht im grausen^e Trümmerfall
Die Scherben des Glücks von Edenhall.

„Die Steinwand,“ spricht er, „springt zu Stück^f,
Die hohe Säule muß zu Fall^g;
Glas ist der Erde Stolz^h und Glück,
In Splitter fällt der Erdenball
Einstⁱ gleich [Pr. 47] dem Glücke von Edenhall.“

L. Uhland.

^a Schenk: [skinker], from schenken to pour out.

^b Gebein: see Pr. 44, a. — Ge= is the Lat. *co* or *con* = together, and has often the same force; both in Collective Nouns, as Gestirn *con*-stellation; in Abstract Nouns, as Gewissen *con*-science; in Adjectives, as gewiß [*con*-scious] sure, gemein *com*-mon; and in Verbs, as gestehen *con*-fess, gebieten *com*-mand.

^c graus: see note ^{ab} to “The Erlking”; and compare grauslich, Suf. 13, b.

^d zu Stiick: (to piece), in pieces.

But holds in his hand the crystal tall,
The shattered Luck of Edenhall.

On the morrow gropes the Butler alone,
The graybeard, in the desert hall,
He seeks his lord's burnt skeleton,
He seeks in the dismal ruins' fall
*The shards of the Luck of Edenhall.

"The stone-wall," saith he, "doth fall aside,
Down must the stately column fall;
Glass is this earth's Luck and Pride,
In atoms shall fall this earthly ball,
One day like the Luck of Edenhall!"

H. W. LONGFELLOW.

^wmuß zu Fall: must (come) to a fall; compare "you must away to prison."

^xStolz: see note ^k to "The Pledge."

^yeinst: (from *ein once*), see Ch. 3. — So, even some English people say *once't*.

^z The Nouns Preis, Quell, Fall, Schall, Hall, Prall, Knall, Schenk, Splitter, formed of the bare roots of Verbs, are all Masculine; so are these, formed of Strong Verb-roots: Spruch, Zug, Riß (fr. reißen to rend), Schritt (fr. schreiten to stride); see note ^{rk} to "The Pledge."

Der Ring des Polykrates.^a

Ballade.

Er stand auf seines Daches Zinnen,
 Er schaute^b mit vergnügten^c Sinnen
 Auf das beherrschte^d Samos hin^b.
 „Dies Alles ist mir unterthänig^e,“
 Begann er zu Aegyptens König,
 „Gesteh^f, daß ich glücklich bin.“ —

„Du hast der Götter Gunst^g erfahren^h!
 Die vormalsⁱ deines Gleichen waren,
 Sie zwingt jetzt deines Scepters Macht.
 Doch einer lebt noch, sie zu rächen [wreak]:
 Dich kann mein Mund [Ch. 14, b] nicht glücklich sprechen
 So lang des Feindes Auge^j wacht.“

Und eh' der König noch geendet,
 Da stellt^k sich, von Milet gesendet,
 Ein Bote dem Tyrannen^l dar^k:
 „Läß, Herr, des Opfers^m Düste steigen,
 Und mit des Lorbeersⁿ muntern Zweigen
 Bekränze^a dir dein festlich Haar!

^a Polycrates, tyrant or prince of the isle of Samos, was one of the ablest rulers of his time. He had a hundred ships of war, the largest navy then in the world; and, secure in his island home, held out for many years against the overwhelming power of Persia. He had for his ally Amasis, king of Egypt, who however renounced his alliance, as related in this Poem; and Polycrates was soon after entrapped by the Persian satrap Oroetes, and crucified, B.C. 522.

The Greeks had a strong conviction that the gods would allow no man to be perfectly happy. Out of this conviction, perhaps, arose the story told by Herodotus, which Schiller has poetized. — We say, 'Tis hard to carry a full cup without spilling.

^b hinschauen: see Pr. 29.

^c vergnügt: gratified; from vergnügen, see Pr. 10, c.

THE RING OF POLYCRATES.

A Ballad.

On his roof's battlements he stood,
He cast his eyes in happy mood

On Samos subject to his sway:
"All this, and more, obeys my hest"
Said he to Egypt's King, his guest:
"Confess I'm happy every way."

"The gods have blest thee more and more!
And those who were thy peers before,
Now own thy sceptre's might the stronger.
Yet one there lives to venge them still;
I may not call thee blest, until
The foeman's eye shall wake no longer."

And ere the King his speech could end,
A courier bent before his Friend,
Sent from Miletus far away;
"Let smoke of offerings rise around,
And let thy festive locks be crown'd
With the proud laurel's laughing spray!"

^a beherrschēn, bekränzen, etc.: see Pr. 1.

^e unterthänig: see Suf. 11.

^f gestehen, gewähren: see Pr. 5.

^g Der Götter Gunst: see note ^{ak} to "The Pilgrim." — For Gunst, see note ^{ad} to "The Pledge."

^h erfahren: etc.: see Pr. 4, a.

ⁱ vormalss: *afore-time*; see note ^{an} to "The Pilgrim."

^j Auge: see Ch. 16, b, and 10, b.

^k darstellen: see Pr. 19.

^l Tyrann: see notes ^b & ^j to "The Pledge." — Now, Polycrates was a *tyrannos*, but not a *Wütherich*.

^m Opfer: see note ^{eh} to "The Pledge."

ⁿ Lorbeer: see notes ^e and ^s to "Mignon."

„Getroffen sank dein Feind vom Speere;
Mich sendet mit der frohen Mähre
Dein treuer Feldherr [field-lord] Polydor“ —
Und nimmt aus einem schwarzen Becken,
Noch blutig, zu der Beiden Schrecken,
Ein wohlbekanntes Haupt hervor.

Der König tritt^a zurück^a mit Grauen.
„Doch warn' ich dich, dem Glück zu trauen.“
Versetzt^b er mit besorgtem^c Blick.
„Bedenk^d, auf ungetreuen^e Wellen —
Wie leicht kann sie der Sturm zerschellen“ —
Schwimmt deiner Flotte zweifelnd^f Glück.“

Und eh' er noch das Wort gesprochen,
Hat ihn der Jubel unterbrochen“,
Der von der Rhede^x jauchzend [Suf. 20] schallt.
Mit fremden Schätzen reich beladen^a,
Kehrt zu den heimischen Gestaden^y
Der Schiffe mastenreicher [rich-in-masts] Wald.

Der königliche Guest erstaunet:
„Dein Glück ist heute [Lat. *hodie*] gut gelaunet“,
Doch fürchte seinen Unbestand^{aa}.
Der Kreter waffenkund'ge^{ab} Scharen
Bedräuen^a dich mit Kriegsgefahren^{ac};
Schon nahe sind sie diesem Strand.“

^o hervornehmen: see Pr. 28.

^p Schreden: conn. with *shriek*, *screech*, *scare*, etc.; see Ch. 7.

^q zurücktreten: see Pr. 43.

^r versetzen: see Pr. 10, e.

^s Sorge: see Ch. 10, b; besorgt care-stricken, anxious.

^t ungetreu: see Pr. 49 and 48.

^u zerschellen, etc.: see Pr. 13.

^v zwei: two, see Ch. 4, a, and 18, b; zweifeln to be “in a strait betwixt two,” to doubt. — So, from the Lat. *duo* two, come *dubitare*, to doubt, dubious, indubitable, etc.

"Spear-smitten fell thy foe before us;
 Thy trusty captain Polydorus
 Hath sent me with the joyful story."
 And to the terror of them Both,
 From a black bason, nothing loth,
 He draws a well-known Head, still gory.

The King steps backward horror-struck:
 "I warn thee yet, mistrust thy Luck!"
 Replies he with a look of care:
 "Bethink thee, on the faithless tides
 Thy fleet's yet doubtful fortune rides, —
 How soon the storm may shatter it there!"

And on the warning words he spoke
 A cry of exultation broke,
 Up from the roads in triumph roaring;
 For, laden rich with foreign stores,
 Turn homeward to their native shores
 Forests of shipmasts, safely mooring.

The kingly Guest stood in dismay:
 "Thy Luck's in merry mood today,
 Yet, fear her fickleness the more!
 The hosts of Cretans good at arms
 Threaten thee still with war's alarms;
 Already are they near this shore."

^w unterbrechen: see Pr. 9.

^x R̄hebe: see Ch. 18, a.

^y Gestade, Geschenk: see Pr. 44, b.

^z Lâune: mood, humour; gut gelauinet in a good humour.

^{aa} Unbestand: see Pr. 46; and note ^k to "The Pledge."

^{ab} kennen: to know; Kunde (see Pr. 44, b, N. B.) cunning (as in "Let my right hand forget her cunning" — Psalm cxxxvii. 5); fundig, see Suf 11.

^{ac} Krieg: war; conn. with friegen to get hold of; and perhaps with Krebs crab, craw; greifen to gripe or grab, &c. — Gefahr, see Pr. 44, b.

Und eh' ihm noch das Wort entfallen^{ad},
Da sieht man's von den Schiffen wallen,

Und tausend Stimmen rufen: „Sieg!
Von Feindesnoth sind wir befreiet^a,
Die Kreter hat der Sturm zerstreuet^u,
Vorbei, geendet ist der Krieg.“

Das hört der Gastfreund mit Entsetzen^{ad}:
„Fürwahr, ich muß dich glücklich schätzen!

Doch,“ spricht er, „zittr' ich für dein Heil^{ae}.
Mir grauet vor der Götter Neide;
Des Lebens ungemischte^{af} Freude
Ward keinem Irdischen zu Theil^{ag}.

„Auch mir ist Alles wohl gerathen,
Bei allen meinen Herrscherthaten

Begleitet^a mich des Himmels Huld;
Doch hatt' ich einen theuren [dear] Erben^{ag},
Den nahm mir Gott, ich sah ihn sterben,
Dem Glück bezahlt^a ich meine Schuld^{ah}.

„Drum, willst du dich vor Leid bewahren^a,
So flehe [Scot. *fleach*] zu den Unsichtbaren^{ai},

Daß sie zum Glück den Schmerz verleihn^{aj}.
Noch Reinen sah ich fröhlich enden,
Auf den mit immer vollen Händen
Die Götter ihre Gaben streuen.

„Und wenn's die Götter nicht gewähren,
So acht' [give heed] auf eines Freundes Lehren [lore]

^{ad}entfallen, entsetzen: see Pr. 3, a. — Entsetzen is here a Noun.
^{ae}Heil: safety; see note " to "Knight Toggenburg."

^{af}ungemischt: see Pr. 49. — For mischen, see Ch. 7.

^{ag}ward — Theil: "became to no earthly (man) for (a) portion";
see note ^{ae} to "The Pledge." — Theil (both Masc. and Neut.) from
theilen to deal, divide; hence a *dole* or portion. Milton speaks of
Samson "dealing dole among his foes;" so the saying, "Happy

And ere the word had left his lips,
 A throng was billowing from the ships:
 “Victory!” from thousand throats ascended:
 “From fear of foes are we deliver’d,
 The Cretan ships the storm has shiver’d,
 The war is past, the war is ended.”

This with amazement hears the Guest:

“In truth I must esteem thee blest;

Yet do I tremble for thy sake:

I dread the jealousy of Heaven;

Never to earthly man was given

Unmingled pleasure to partake.

With me too everything succeeds,

In all my high and sovereign deeds

Heaven’s favour at my side has staid;

Yet one beloved heir had I,

Him God removed — I saw him die;

My debt to Fortune I have paid.

“Then, wouldst thou guard thyself from ill,

So pray the Immortals that they will

Add Sorrow to thy Fortune’s dower.

I ne’er saw one have blessed end

On whom the gods their gifts did send

From full hands in unbroken shower.

“And if the gods will not be kind,

Hear from a faithful friend his mind,

man be his dole.” — From Erbe heir, and Theil portion, comes das Erbtheil, p. 109, line 9.

^{ah} Schuld: see note ^r on page 143; there it meant guilt, here it means debt.

^{ai} unsichtbar: from Sicht, see Ch. 9, b; sichtbar: see Suf. 7, b; unsichtbar, see Pr. 49.

^{aj} verleihen, verzeihen: see Pr. 10, a.

Und rufe^{ak} selbst das Unglück her^{ak},
 Und was von allen deinen Schätzen
 Dein Herz am Höchsten mag ergözen^h,
 Das nimm und wirf's in dieses Meer!"

Und Jener spricht, von Furcht beweget^a:
 "Von Allem, was die Insel heget^{al},
 Ist dieser Ring mein höchstes Gut.
 Ihn will ich den Erinnen^{am} weihen,
 Ob sie mein Glück mir dann verzeihen^{aj},"
 Und wirft das Kleinod in die Fluth.

Und bei des nächsten Morgens Lichte —
 Da tritt mit fröhlichem Gesichte
 Ein Fischer vor den Fürsten hin:
 "Herr, diesen Fisch hab' ich gefangen,
 Wie keiner noch in's Netz gegangen;
 Dir zum Geschenke^y bring' ich ihn."

Und als der Koch den Fisch zertheilet^u,
 Kommt er bestürzt^a herbeigeeilet^{an}
 Und ruft mit hocherstauntem Blick:
 "Sieh, Herr, den Ring, den du getragen [draw, carry,
 Ihn fand ich in des Fisches Magen; wear],
 O, ohne Gränzen ist dein Glück!"

Hier wendet^{ao} sich der Gast mit Grausen:
 "So kann ich hier nicht fernher hausen,

^{ak}herrufen: see Pr. 26; and Diagram, page 67.

^{al}Insel: from Lat. *insula*; our *isle* is also from the Latin; Italian *isola*, French *île*. — For *hegen* see Note ^{eg} to "The Pledge."

And woo Mischance to come to thee;
 Whatever thing of all thy treasure
 May yield thy heart the highest pleasure,
 That take, and fling it in the sea!"

Then speaks the Other, moved with fear:
 "Of all that the isle holdeth dear,
 This Ring is my most precious good;
 It to the Furies I'll devote,
 If they 'll forgive my happy lot" —
 And flings the jewel in the flood.

And when the morrow's light began,
 Comes to the Prince a fisherman
 With joyous face: "My lord, I've caught thee
 This fish, 'tis such as never yet
 Has found its way into my net;
 This for a present I have brought thee."

The fish was opened by the cook,
 But presently with wilder'd look
 He rushes in, and cries astounded:
 "The Ring that once thy finger bound,
 Lo, in the fish's maw I found;
 O Prince, thy fortune is unbounded!"

The Guest in horror turns away:
 "With thee no further can I stay,

^{am} Erinnen: *Erinnyes*, a Greek name for the three Furies, or avenging deities.

^{an} herbeieilen: to hasten to (one's) side; see Pr. 18 and 30.

^{ao} wenden: see note ^{ay} to "The Pledge."

Mein Freund kannst du nicht weiter sein.
Die Götter wollen dein Verderben^{ap}:
Fort eil'^{aq} ich, nicht mit dir zu sterben."
Und sprach's, und schiffte^{ar} schnell sich ein^{ar}.

Schiller.

^{ap}verderben: see Pr. 10, c; also note n to "The Pilgrim."

^{aq}fürteilen: see Pr. 24, a.

My friend canst thou no longer be;
The gods are bent on thy undoing;
I will begone, nor share thy ruin."

He spake, and swiftly put to sea.

J. S. S.

^{ar}einschiffen: see Pr. 21, a.

PART IV.

Der Erlkönig.

Wer reitet so spät durch Nacht und Wind?
 Es ist der Vater mit seinem Kind;
 Er hat den Knaben wohl in dem Arm,
 Er fasst ihn sicher, er hält ihn warm.

„Mein Sohn, was birgst du so bang dein Gesicht?“
 Siehst, Vater, du den Erlkönig nicht?
 Den Erlkönig mit Kron' und Schweif? —
 „Mein Sohn, es ist ein Nebelstreif.“

„Du liebes Kind, komm, geh mit mir!
 Gar schöne Spiele spel' ich mit dir;
 Manch' bunte Blumen sind an dem Strand,
 Meine Mutter hat manch' gülden Gewand.“

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und hörest du nicht,
 Was Erlenkönig mir leise verspricht?
 „Sei ruhig, bleibe ruhig, mein Kind,
 In dünnen Blättern säuselt der Wind.“

„Willst, feiner Knabe, du mit mir gehn?
 Meine Töchter sollen dich warten schön;
 Meine Töchter führen den nächtlichen Reihn,
 Und wiegen und tanzen und singen dich ein.“

Mein Vater, mein Vater, und siehst du nicht dort
Erlkönigs Töchter am düstern Ort?

„Mein Sohn, mein Sohn, ich seh' es genau,
Es scheinen die alten Weiden so grau.“

„Ich liebe dich, mich reizt deine schöne Gestalt;
Und bist du nicht willig, so brauch' ich Gewalt.“
Mein Vater, mein Vater, jetzt fasst er mich an!
Erlkönig hat mir ein Leids gethan! —

Dem Vater grauset's, er reitet geschwind,
Er hält in den Armen das ächzende Kind,
Erreicht den Hof mit Mühs und Noth;
In seinen Armen das Kind war todt.

Der Pilgrim.

Noch in meines Lebens Venze
War ich, und ich wandert' aus,
Und der Jugend frohe Tänze
Ließ ich in des Vaters Haus.

All mein Erbtheil, meine Habe
Warf ich fröhlich glaubend hin,
Und am leichten Pilgerstabe
Zog ich fort mit Kinderfinn.

Denn mich trieb ein mächtig Hoffen
Und ein dunkles Glaubenswort;
Wandle, rief's, der Weg ist offen,
Immer nach dem Aufgang fort.

Bis zu einer goldnen Pforten
 Du gelangst, da gehst Du ein;
 Denn das Irdische wird dorten
 Himmlich, unvergänglich sein.

Abend ward's und wurde Morgen,
 Nimmer, nimmer stand ich still;
 Aber immer blieb's verborgen,
 Was ich suche, was ich will.

Berge lagen mir im Wege,
 Ströme hemmten meinen Fuß;
 Über Schlünde baut' ich Stege,
 Brücken durch den wilden Fluß.

Und zu eines Stroms Gestaden
 Kam ich, der nach Morgen floß;
 Froh vertrauend seinem Faden,
 Warf ich mich in seinen Schoß.

Hin zu einem großen Meere
 Trieb mich seiner Wellen Spiel;
 Vor mir liegt's in weiter Leere,
 Näher bin ich nicht dem Ziel.

Ach, kein Steg will dahin führen!
 Ach, der Himmel über mir
 Will die Erde nie berühren,
 Und das Dort ist niemals hier.

Das Schloß am Meere.

Hast du das Schloß gesehen,
 Das hohe Schloß am Meer?
 Golden und rosig wehen
 Die Wolken drüber her.

Es möchte sich niederneigen
 In die spiegelflare Fluth;
 Es möchte streben und steigen
 In der Abendwolken Gluth.

„Wohl hab' ich es gesehen,
 Das hohe Schloß am Meer,
 Und den Mond darüber stehen,
 Und Nebel weit umher.“

Der Wind und des Meeres Wallen
 Gaben sie frischen Klang?
 Vernahmst du aus hohen Hallen
 Saiten und Festgesang?

„Die Winde, die Wogen alle
 Lagen in tiefer Ruh,
 Einem Klagespiel aus der Halle
 Hört' ich mit Thränen zu.“

Sahest du oben gehen
 Den König und sein Gemahl?
 Der rothen Mäntel Wehen?
 Der goldenen Kronen Strahl?

Führten sie nicht mit Wonne
 Eine schöne Jungfrau dar,
 Herrlich wie eine Sonne
 Strahlend im goldnen Haar?

„Wohl sah ich die Eltern beide,
 Ohne der Kronen Licht,
 Im schwarzen Trauerkleide;
 Die Jungfrau sah ich nicht.“

Mignon.

Kennst Du das Land, wo die Citronen blüh'n,
 Im dunkeln Laub die Gold-Orangen glü'hn,
 Ein sanfter Wind vom blauen Himmel weht,
 Die Myrthe still, und hoch der Lorbeer steht?
 Kennst Du es wohl?

Dahin! dahin
 Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Geliebter, ziehn.

Kennst Du das Haus? Auf Säulen ruht sein Dach,
 Es glänzt der Saal, es schimmert das Gemach;
 Und Marmorbilder steh'n und seh'n mich an:
 Was hat man Dir, Du armes Kind, gethan?
 Kennst Du es wohl?

Dahin! dahin
 Möcht' ich mit Dir, o mein Beschützer, ziehn.

Kennst Du den Berg und seinen Wolfensteg?
 Das Maulthier sucht im Nebel seinen Weg,

In Höhlen wohnt der Drachen alte Brut,
Es stürzt der Fels und über ihn die Fluth.
Kennst Du ihn wohl?

Dahin! dahin
Geht unser Weg! o Vater, laß uns ziehn!

Ritter Toggenburg.

„Ritter, treue Schwesterliebe
Widmet euch dies Herz.
Fordert keine andre Liebe,
Denn es macht mir Schmerz.
Ruhig mag ich euch erscheinen,
Ruhig gehen sehn.
Eurer Augen stilles Weinen
Kann ich nicht verstehn.“

Und er hört's mit stummem Harme,
Reißt sich blutend los,
Preßt sie heftig in die Arme,
Schwingt sich auf sein Roß,
Schickt zu seinen Männern allen
In dem Lande Schweiz;
Nach dem heil'gen Grab sie wallen,
Auf der Brust das Kreuz.

Große Thaten dort geschehen
Durch der Helden Arm;
Ihres Helmes Büsche wehen
In der Feinde Schwarm.
Und des Toggenburgers Name
Schreckt den Muselmann;

Doch das Herz von seinem Grame
Nicht genesen kann.

Und ein Jahr hat er's getragen,
Trägt's nicht länger mehr,
Ruhe kann er nicht erjagen
Und verläßt das Heer,
Sieht ein Schiff an Joppe's Strande,
Das die Segel bläßt,
Schiffet heim zum theuren Lande,
Wo ihr Athem weht.

Und an ihres Schlosses Pforte
Klopft der Pilger an,
Ach! und mit dem Donnerworte
Wird sie aufgethan:
„Die ihr suchet, trägt den Schleier,
Ist des Himmels Braut.
Gestern war des Tages Feier,
Der sie Gott getraut.“

Da verläßet er auf immer
Seiner Väter Schloß;
Seine Waffen sieht er nimmer,
Noch sein treues Roß.
Von der Toggenburg hernieder
Steigt er unbekannt,
Denn es deckt die edlen Glieder
Härenes Gewand.

Und er baut sich eine Hütte
Jener Gegend nah,
Wo das Kloster aus der Mitte

Düstrer Linden sah;
 Harrend von des Morgens Lichte
 Bis zu Abends Schein,
 Stille Hoffnung im Gesichte,
 Saß er da allein,

Blickte nach dem Kloster drüber,
 Blickte Stunden lang
 Nach dem Fenster seiner Lieben,
 Bis das Fenster klang,
 Bis die Liebliche sich zeigte,
 Bis das theure Bild
 Sich in's Thal herunter neigte
 Ruhig, engelmild.

Und dann legt' er froh sich nieder,
 Schließt getrostet ein,
 Still sich freuend, wenn es wieder
 Morgen würde sein.
 Und so saß er viele Tage,
 Saß viel Jahre lang,
 Harrend ohne Schmerz und Klage
 Bis das Fenster klang,

Bis die Liebliche sich zeigte,
 Bis das theure Bild
 Sich in's Thal herunterneigte
 Ruhig, engelmild.
 Und so saß er, eine Leiche,
 Eines Morgens da;
 Nach dem Fenster noch das bleiche,
 Stille Antlitz sah.

Sprüche.

Warum bin ich vergänglich, o Zeus? so fragte die Schönheit.

Macht' ich doch, sagte der Gott, nur das Vergängliche schön.

Und die Liebe, die Blumen, der Thau und die Jugend vernahmen's;

Alle gingen sie weg, weinend, von Jupiter's Thron.

Früchte bringt das Leben dem Mann; doch hangen sie selten

Roth und lustig am Zweig, wie uns ein Apfel begrüßt.

Kinder werfen den Ball an die Wand, und fangen ihn wieder;

Aber ich lob' mir das Spiel, wirft mir der Freund ihn zurück.

Halte das Bild der Würdigen fest! Wie leuchtende Sterne

Theilte sie aus die Natur durch den unendlichen Raum.

Wem zu glauben ist, redlicher Freund, das kann ich Dir sagen:

Glaube dem Leben; es lehrt besser als Redner und Buch.

Wisst ihr, wie auch der Kleine was ist? Er mache das Kleine

Recht; der Große begehrt just so das Große zu thun.

Wer ist denn wirklich ein Fürst? Ich habe es immer gesehen,

Der nur ist wirklich Fürst, der es vermochte zu sein.

F a b e l n.

Der junge Hase.

Mit ernstem Schritte, wie der Held
Von Mancha, kam ein junger Hase
Nach Haus, und seine wunde Nase
Schien laut zu rufen: Staune, Welt!

„Du blutest, Neffe?“ sprach ein Greis
Zu ihm, „was hat sich zugetragen?“
„Se num, ich habe mich geschlagen,“
Versezt' er, „und der Kampf war heiß.“

„Was,“ rief die ganze Sippschaft aus,
„Geschlagen? wie? mit welchem Feinde?
Mit einem Hund?“ „Ja, liebe Freunde,
Mit einer ungeheuerl. Maus.“

Das Johanniswürmchen.

Ein Johanniswürmchen saß,
Seines Sternenscheins
Unbewußt, im weichen Gras
Eines Bardenhains.

Leise kroch aus faulem Moos
Seine Nachbarin,
Eine Kröte, hin und schoß
All ihr Gift auf ihn.

„Ach! was hab' ich dir gethan?“
Rief der Wurm ihr zu.
„Ei!“ fuhr ihn das Unthier an,
„Warum glänzest du?“

Der Schmetterling und die Biene.

Die Biene ließ den Schmetterling
Einst ihre fetten Speicher sehn.

„Schön!“ rief der bunte Gast: „doch muß ich dir
gestehen,
Ich täuschte nicht mit dir.“ — „Warum nicht? dummes
Ding!

Was hast denn Du? Laß sehn; wir wollen inventiren:
Ich hab' ein volles Haus!“ — „Und ich . . . nichts zu
verlieren.“

Des Esels Trost.

Hab' nichts, mich dran zu freuen,
Bin dumm und ungestalt,
Ohn' Muth und ohn' Gewalt;
Mein spotten und mich scheuen
Die Menschen jung und alt,
Bin weder warm noch kalt.

Hab' nichts, mich dran zu freuen,
Bin dumm und ungestalt,
Muß Stroh und Disteln käuen,
Werd' unter Säcken alt —
Ach, die Natur schuf mich im Grimme!
Sie gab mir nichts . . . als eine schöne Stimme.

Das Veilchen.

Ein Veilchen auf der Wiese stand,
Gebückt in sich und unbekannt;
Es war ein herzig's Veilchen.

Da kam die junge Schäferin
 Mit leichtem Schritt und munterm Sinn
 Daher, daher,
 Die Wiese her, und sang.

Ach! denkt das Veilchen, wär ich nur
 Die schönste Blume der Natur,
 Ach nur ein kleines Veilchen,
 Bis mich das Liebchen abgepflückt,
 Und an den Busen matt gedrückt!
 Ach nur, ach nur
 Ein Viertelstündchen lang!

Ach! aber ach! das Mädchen kam
 Und nicht in Acht das Veilchen nahm,
 Ertrat das arme Veilchen.
 Es sank und starb und freut' sich noch:
 Und sterb' ich denn, so sterb' ich doch
 Durch sie, durch sie,
 Zu ihren Füßen doch.

Der Sänger.

Was hör' ich draußen vor dem Thor,
 Was auf der Brücke schallen?
 Laß den Gesang vor unserm Ohr
 Im Saale wiederhallen!
 Der König sprach's, der Page lief;
 Der Knabe kam, der König rief:
 Laßt mir herein den Alten!

Gegrüßet seid mir, edle Herrn,
 Gegrüßt ihr, schöne Damen!
 Welch' reicher Himmel! Stern bei Stern!
 Wer kennet ihre Namen?
 Im Saal voll Pracht und Herrlichkeit
 Schließt, Augen, euch; hier ist nicht Zeit
 Sich staunend zu ergötzen.

Der Sänger drückt' die Augen ein,
 Und schlug in vollen Tönen;
 Die Ritter schauten mutig drein,
 Und in den Schoß die Schönen.
 Der König, dem das Lied gefiel,
 Ließ ihm, zum Lohnen für sein Spiel,
 Eine goldne Kette bringen.

Die goldne Kette gieb mir nicht,
 Die Kette gieb den Rittern,
 Vor deren kühnem Angesicht
 Der Feinde Lanzen splittern;
 Gieb sie dem Kanzler, den du hast,
 Und laß ihn noch die goldne Last
 Zu andern Lasten tragen.

Ich singe, wie der Vogel singt,
 Der in den Zweigen wohnet;
 Das Lied, das aus der Kehle dringt,
 Ist Lohn, der reichlich lohnet.
 Doch darf ich bitten, bitt' ich eins:
 Laß mir den besten Becher Weins
 In purem Golde reichen.

Er setzt' ihn an, er trank ihn aus:
 O Trank voll süßer Labe!
 O! dreimal hochbeglücktes Haus,
 Wo das ist kleine Gabe!
 Ergeht's euch wohl, so denkt an mich,
 Und danket Gott so warm, als ich
 Für diesen Trunk euch danke.

Aus Wilhelm Meister.

Wer nie sein Brot mit Thränen aß,
 Wer nie die kummervollen Nächte
 Auf seinem Bette weinend saß,
 Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen Mächte!

Ihr führt in's Leben uns hinein,
 Ihr laßt den Armen schuldig werden,
 Dann überlaßt ihr ihn der Pein;
 Denn alle Schuld rächt sich auf Erden.

Die Bürgschaft.

Zu Dionys, dem Thyrannen, schlich
 Damon, den Dolch im Gewande,
 Ihn schlügen die Hässcher in Bande.
 „Was wolltest du mit dem Dolche? sprich.“
 Entgegnet ihm finster der Wütherich. —
 „Die Stadt vom Thyrannen befreien.“ —
 „Das sollst du am Kreuze bereuen.“ —

„Ich bin,“ spricht jener, „zu sterben bereit,
Und bitte nicht um mein Leben;
Doch willst du Gnade mir geben —
Ich flehe dich um drei Tage Zeit,
Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit —
Ich lasse den Freund dir als Bürgen;
Ihn magst du, entrinn' ich, erwürgen.“

Da lächelt der König mit arger List,
Und spricht nach kurzem Bedenken:
„Drei Tage will ich dir schenken;
Doch wisse, wenn sie verstrichen, die Frist,
Eh' du zurück mir gegeben bist,
So muß er statt deiner erblässen,
Doch dir ist die Strafe erlassen.“

Und er kommt zum Freunde: „Der König gebeut,
Dass ich am Kreuz mit dem Leben
Bezahle das frevelnde Streben;
Doch will er mir gönnen drei Tage Zeit,
Bis ich die Schwester dem Gatten gefreit;
So bleib' du dem König zum Pfande,
Bis ich komme, zu lösen die Bande.“

Und schweigend umarmt ihn der treue Freund,
Und liefert sich aus dem Thramen;
Der Andere ziehet von dannen.
Und ehe das dritte Morgenroth scheint,
Hat er schnell mit dem Gatten die Schwester vereint,
Eilt heim mit sorgender Seele,
Damit er die Frist nicht verfehle.

Da gießt unendlicher Regen herab,
Von den Bergen stürzen die Quellen,

Und die Bäche, die Ströme schwellen;
 Und er kommt an's Ufer mit wanderndem Stab —
 Da reiset die Brücke der Strudel hinab,
 Und donnernd sprengen die Wogen
 Des Gewölbes krachenden Bogen.

Und trostlos irrt er an Ufers Rand:
 Wie weit er auch spähet und blicket
 Und die Stimme, die rufende, schicket,
 Da stöset kein Nachen vom sichern Strand,
 Der ihn setze an das gewünschte Land,
 Kein Schiffer lenket die Fähre,
 Und der wilde Strom wird zum Meere.

Da sinkt er an's Ufer und weint und fleht,
 Die Hände zum Zeus erhoben:
 „O, hemme des Stromes Toben!
 Es eilen die Stunden, im Mittag steht
 Die Sonne, und wenn sie niedergeht,
 Und ich kann die Stadt nicht erreichen,
 So muß der Freund mir erblassen.“

Doch wachsend erneut sich des Stromes Wuth,
 Und Welle auf Welle zerrinnet,
 Und Stunde an Stunde entrinnet —
 Da treibt ihn die Angst, da faßt er sich Muth,
 Und wirft sich hinein in die brausende Fluth
 Und theilt mit gewaltigen Armen
 Den Strom — und ein Gott hat Erbarmen —

Und gewinnet das Ufer und eilet fort
 Und danket dem rettenden Götter;
 Da stürzet die raubende Rotte

Hervor aus des Waldes nächtlichem Ort,
 Den Pfad ihm sperrend, und schnaubet Mord
 Und hemmet des Wanderers Eile
 Mit drohend geschwungener Keule.

„Was wollt ihr?“ ruft er, vor Schrecken bleich,
 „Ich habe nichts, als mein Leben,
 Das muß ich dem Könige geben!“
 Und entreißt die Keule dem nächsten gleich:
 „Um des Freundes willen, erbarmet euch!“
 Und drei mit gewaltigen Streichen
 Erlegt er; die Andern entweichen.

Und die Sonne versendet glühenden Brand,
 Und von der unendlichen Mühe
 Ermattet, sinken die Kniee:
 „O hast du mich gnädig aus Räubershand,
 Aus dem Strom mich errettet an's heilige Land,
 Und soll hier verschmachtend verderben,
 Und der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben!“

Und horch! da sprudelt es silberhell,
 Ganz nahe, wie rieselndes Rauschen,
 Und stille hält er, zu lauschen,
 Und sieh, aus dem Felsen, geschwäztig, schnell,
 Springt murmelnd hervor ein lebendiger Quell.
 Und freudig büct er sich nieder
 Und erfrischt die brennenden Glieder.

Und die Sonne blickt durch der Zweige Grün
 Und malt auf den glänzenden Matten
 Der Bäume gigantische Schatten.
 Und zwei Wanderer sieht er die Straße ziehn,
 Will eilenden Laufes vorüber fliehn,

Da hört er die Worte sie sagen:
 „Jetzt wird er an's Kreuz geschlagen!“

Und die Angst beflügelt den eilenden Fuß,
 Ihn jagen der Sorgen Qualen;
 Da schimmern in Abendroths Strahlen
 Von ferne die Zinnen von Syrakus,
 Und entgegen kommt ihm Philostratus,
 Des Hauses redlicher Hüther;
 Der erkennet entsezt den Gebieter:

„Zurück! du rettest den Freund nicht mehr,
 So rette das eigene Leben!
 Den Tod erleidet er eben.
 Von Stunde zu Stunde gewartet' er
 Mit hoffender Seele der Wiederkehr;
 Ihm konnte den muthigen Glauben
 Der Hohn des Tyrannen nicht rauben.“ —

„Und ist es zu spät, und kann ich ihm nicht
 Ein Retter willkommen erscheinen,
 So soll mich der Tod ihm vereinen.
 Des rühme der blut'ge Tyrann sich nicht,
 Daß der Freund dem Freunde gebrochen die Pflicht;
 Er schlachte der Opfer zweie
 Und glaube an Liebe und Treue!“

Und die Sonne geht unter — da steht er am Thor
 Und sieht das Kreuz schon erhöhet,
 Das die Menge gaffend umstehet;
 An dem Seile schon zieht man den Freund empor, —
 Da zertrennt er gewaltig den dichten Chor:
 „Mich Henker，“ ruft er, „erwürget!
 Da bin ich, für den er gebürget.“

Und Erstaunen ergreift das Volk umher;
 In den Armen liegen sich Beide
 Und weinen vor Schmerzen und Freude.
 Da sieht man kein Auge thränenleer,
 Und zum Könige bringt man die Wundermähr;
 Der fühlt ein menschliches Rühren,
 Lässt schnell vor den Thron sie führen. —

Und blicket sie lange verwundernd an.
 Drauf spricht er: „Es ist euch gelungen,
 Ihr habt das Herz mir bezwungen!
 Und die Treue, sie ist doch kein leerer Wahn,
 So nehmet auch mich zum Genossen an:
 Ich sei, gewährt mir die Bitte,
 In eurem Bunde der Dritte.“

Der Handschuh.

Bor seinem Löwengarten,
 Das Kampfspiel zu erwarten,
 Saß König Franz,
 Und um ihn die Großen der Krone,
 Und rings auf hohem Balkone
 Die Damen in schönem Kranz.

Und wie er winkt mit dem Finger,
 Auf thut sich der weite Zwinger,
 Und hinein mit bedächtigem Schritt
 Ein Löwe tritt
 Und sieht sich stumm
 Rings um

Mit langem Gähnen,
Und schüttelt die Mähnen
Und streckt die Glieder
Und legt sich nieder.

Und der König windt wieder —
Da öffnet sich behend
Ein zweites Thor,
Daraus rennt
Mit wildem Sprunge
Ein Tiger hervor.
Wie der den Löwen erschaut,
Brüllt er laut,
Schlägt mit dem Schweif
Einen furchtbaren Reif
Und reckt die Zunge,
Und im Kreise scheu
Umgeht er den Leu,
Grimmig schnurrend;
Drauf legt er sich murrend
Zur Seite nieder.

Und der König windt wieder —
Da speit das doppelt geöffnete Haus
Zwei Leoparden auf Einmal aus.
Die stürzen mit muthiger Kampfbegier
Auf das Tigerthier;
Das packt sie mit seinen grimmigen Täzen,
Und der Leu mit Gebrüll
Richtet sich auf — da wird's still;
Und herum im Kreis,
Von Mordsucht heiß,
Lagern sich die gräulichen Katzen.

Da fällt von Altans Rand
 Ein Handschuh von schöner Hand
 Zwischen den Tiger und den Leun
 Mitten hinein.

Und zu Ritter Delorges, spottender Weiß,
 Wendet sich Fräulein Kunigund':
 „Herr Ritter, ist Eure Lieb' so heiß,
 Wie Ihr mir's schwört zu jeder Stund',
 Ei, so hebt mir den Handschuh auf!“

Und der Ritter, in schnellem Lauf,
 Steigt hinab in den furchtbar'n Zwinger
 Mit festem Schritte,
 Und aus der Ungeheuer Mitte
 Nimmt er den Handschuh mit keckem Finger.

Und mit Erstaunen und mit Grauen
 Sehen's die Ritter und Edelfrauen,
 Und gelassen bringt er den Handschuh zurück.
 Da schallt ihm sein Lob aus jedem Munde,
 Aber mit zärtlichem Liebesblick —
 Er verheisst ihm sein nahes Glück —
 Empfängt ihn Fräulein Kunigunde.
 Und er wirft ihr den Handschuh in's Gesicht:
 „Den Dank, Dame, begehr' ich nicht!“
 Und verlässt sie zur selben Stunde.

Die Frösche.

Ein großer Teich war zugefroren;
Die Fröschlein, in der Tiefe verloren,
Durften nicht ferner quacken noch springen,
Versprachen sich aber, im halben Traum,
Fänden sie nur da oben Raum,
Wie Nachtigallen wollten sie singen.
Der Thauwind kam, das Eis zerschmolz,
Nun ruderten sie, und landeten stolz,
Und saßen am Ufer weit und breit,
Und quackten wie vor alter Zeit.

 The last two Poems, "The Luck of Edenhall," and "The Ring of Polycrates," are given in PART III. without Interlinear Translation, and therefore, need not be repeated here.

APPENDIX.

SENTENCES FOR RE-TRANSLATION.

THE ERL-KING.

The father has the boy in his arm.
 Dost thou not hear the wind?
 He rides through night and wind.
 My mother is on the strand.
 Wilt thou go with me?
 My daughters have beautiful flowers.
 Why dost thou ride so fast?
 Is the king dead! Who has his crown? His son.
 The wind whistles in dry leaves.
 Come, go with me, my son.
 My sweet boy was dead in his arms.
 How (wie) gray the willows are!
 My daughters shall sing the child to sleep — they
 love the child.
 The king is-using force, and the nation (das Volk)
 groans.
 His child has a beautiful figure.

THE PILGRIM.

I was yet in my father's house.
 It grew morning, and I travelled forth.
 I built bridges across the wild river.
 A mighty hope drove me to the great sea; but it
 lies before me in wide emptiness; and I am not nearer
 to the goal.
 "Wander", cried he, "the way is open." And I
 stood never still.

The heaven above me will never touch the earth.
The bridge leads to the path over the mountain.
I go the way of all the earth (alles Erdischen),
said (the) king David.

THE CASTLE BY THE SEA.

Hast thou seen the high castle by the sea?
Indeed, I have seen it, and the moon stand over it;
and I heard festive songs out of the lofty halls, but I
listened to a dirge with tears.

Why weepest thou? I saw the king and his wife,
and they are now dead. The beautiful maiden is in
the black mourning dress.

MIGNON.

Italy (Italien) is the land where the orange blooms.
A soft wind blows from the blue heaven. The myrtle
stands still, and high the laurel. Thither let us travel,
my beloved one!

The roof on my father's House rests on pillars. The
hall glitters, and many marble statues stand there.
Knowest thou it? Thither, over the Alps, let us travel,
my protector!

The mule on the (den) Alps seeks his way in the
fog. The old brood of the dragons dwells in the caverns,
the rock falls and over it the flood — O, the Alps!
over the Alps, thither, my father, goes our way.

KNIGHT TOGGENBURG.

He hears her with silent grief, presses her vehemently
into his arms, swings himself on his horse, and wanders
to the Holy Sepulchre. His name terrifies the Mussul-
man; but his heart cannot recover of its grief.

He forsakes the army, and sails home to the dear
land where she dwells (wohnt). But, alas, she is in

the Cloister in the midst of gloomy lindens, and is the bride of heaven.

The Knight turns Monk (*Mönch*), and builds himself a hut near that region; he looked to the window of his beloved (one), till the window sounded and the lovely one showed herself.

And, so looking, sat he there one day, a corpse; and his pale face looked yet towards the window.

SAYINGS.

(The) Beauty asked Jupiter: Why am I perishable? He answered (*antwortete*): I made only the Perishable beautiful.

FABLES.

A young Hare came home with solemn step, like the hero of Mancha, and his nose was bloody. Thou bleedest, cried his mother, what has happened? I have fought, replied he, and the battle was hot. Fought! with whom? With a big, big Mouse. O thou hero!

A Toad crept out of rotten moss. She crept up to the Glow-worm in the soft grass, and shot all her poison upon him. "Alas! why?" cried the worm, "What have I done?" The toad answered, "Why glitterest thou?"

The Butterfly said to the Bee: "Thou art rich, but I must confess I would not change with thee." "Why? Have I not a full house?" "O yes, but I have nothing to lose, and no cares (*Sorgen*)."

The Ass said: "It is true, I am mis-shapen, stupid, without courage or strength; but I know, Nature loves me much (*sehr*), for (*denn*) she gave me a beautiful voice."

Coriolanus used (*pſflegte*) to say; "O! your sweet voices! your sweet voices!"

THE VIOLET.

A violet stood on the meadow, weak (*ſchwach*) and unknown; but it was a darling violet. A young Shepherdess came over the meadow with light step, and sang, and sang. The violet loved the shepherdess, and wished to be the most beautiful flower in (the) nature, in order (*um*) to die on her (*ihrer*) bosom. But the girl came, and trod the poor violet to death; it died, and sang: "I die, but I die at her feet!"

THE MINSTREL.

The King spoke: "What hear I outside before the gate? Is it the Minstrel? Let his song resound in our hall." The page ran, the Minstrel came, and he cried: "Be greeted, noble lords; be greeted, fair ladies. Oh, hall full of splendour and glory!" And he sang in full tones a song of love, and a song of heroic courage (*Heldengeſang*); and the fair ones looked into their lap, and the knights looked bravely about.

The King spoke, the page ran and fetched a golden chain for the (*den*) Minstrel. "Give me not the chain; give it to the knights, to the chancellor; but if I may ask, give me wine, the best wine in a golden goblet." He drank it up, his face glowed, and he cried: "Oh! highly-favoured house, where that is a small gift! Thank God, as I thank you for this draught!"

FROM WILHELM MEISTER.

(The) Queen Louise ate her bread with tears, sh
sat all night weeping on her bed; she knew you, ye
heavenly powers!

She was not guilty; yet was she unfortunate, and died
in her grief (Pein); but by the arm of her heroes fell
her great foe; for all guilt avenges itself on earth.

THE PLEDGE.

Damon had the dagger in his garment.
The bailiffs clapt him into bonds.
He wanted to free the town from the tyrant.

I am ready to die, said Damon, but grant me three
days' time, till I have married my sister to her husband.
My friend shall be surety for me.

The King smiles and says: Three days I will give
thee, but comest thou not back, then must he grow
pale instead of thee.

The faithful friend embraces Damon, and delivers
himself up to the tyrant; and the other travels from
thence. Quickly has he united his sister to her husband,
and hastens home.

And as he comes to the shore, there he finds that
the waves have burst the arches of the bridge, and
that the whirlpool has torn it away.

Disconsolate he wanders on the shore, and sends his calling voice far and wide; but he sees neither (weder) boatman nor (noch) boat, and the wild stream grows into a sea.

Then (the) he sinks down and prays to God with weeping voice: "The hours are fleeting, and if the sun goes down, ere I can reach the town, then must my friend die. Oh check the fury of the stream!"

Then (the) anguish drives him, and gives him courage, and he throws himself into the roaring river, and gains the shore, and thanks the god who saved him.

Now a gang of robbers blocks his path, and checks his haste with threateningly brandished club. "I have nothing but my life, and that must I give to the King," he cries, pale with terror; and (the) despair (Verzweiflung) gives (verleibt) him strength, and he slays three of the robbers; the others escape.

To this endless toil he succumbs (erstiegt er), and weary sinks he down, and prays to Jupiter for renewed vigour and refreshment — and Jupiter has pity.

There bubbles out of the rock a living spring; and he refreshes his weary limbs, and hastens on.

It is getting late, and the trees cast their long shadows on the green meadows. Then he hears two wanderers say: "Now he is being nailed to the cross."

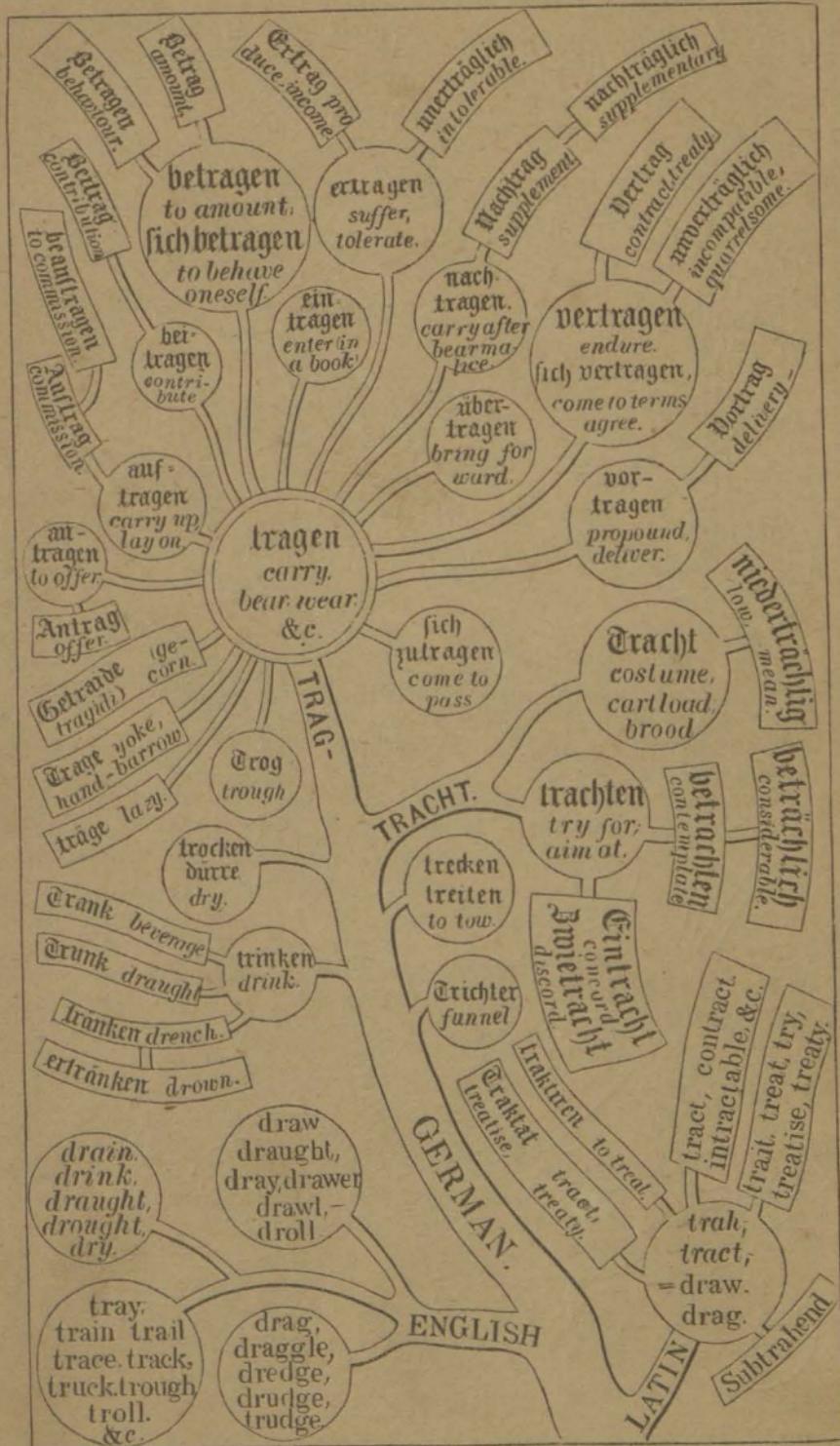
The faithful Keeper of his house also meets him, and cries: "Go back; thou wilt no more save thy friend, then save thine own life."

If I cannot save him, then I will die with him the tyrant shall know that (the) faithfulness is-worth more (mehr gilt) than (the) life, and that a friend does not break his duty to his friend.

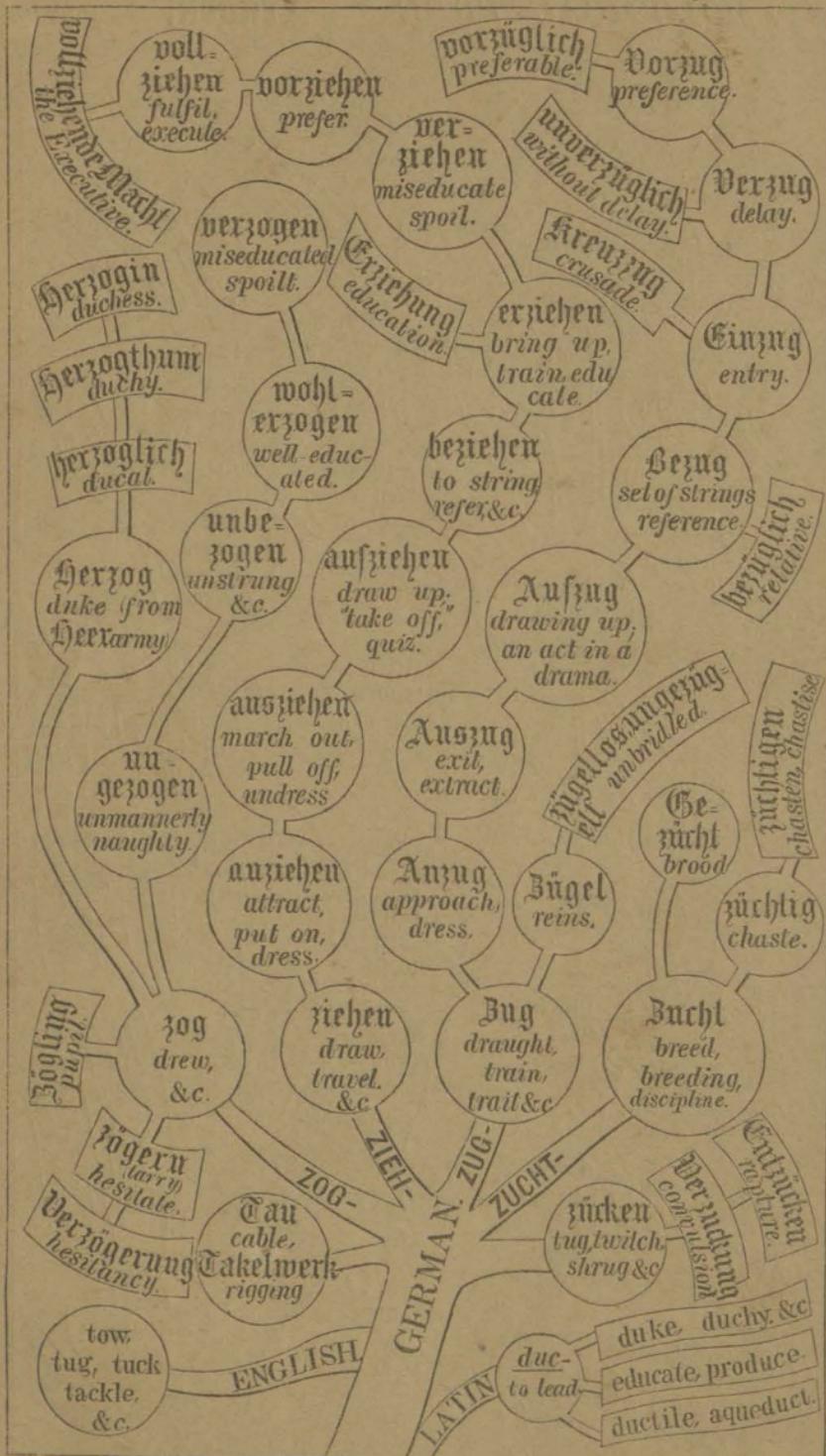
And the sun sets; and he stands at the gate, and when he beholds the cross already reared, he bursts through the gaping multitude, and cries: "Here I am, for whom he stood surety — I am he (es) who is to die (da sterben soll)."

The friends are clasped in each other's arms, and weep for joy and sorrow; no eye remains dry, and quickly they bring the wondrous story to the tyrant's ear.

Long looks the tyrant at them wondering, and then he speaks: "It is true (the) faithfulness is after-all (doch) not an empty delusion; greater love has nobody, than that he die for his friend. — Let me be, I pray, the third in your league."



ETYMOLOGICAL TREE — ziehen.



The above are but a few of the most important Derivatives of *ziehen*.

INDEX.

DG The small letters refer to Foot-notes.

A

A becomes E, Ea 34
— O, 33
a, an, from *ein* one,
ane 36, line 7
ab, Vb.-Pr. 58
Abend 10, 30, 34
Abendroth 154
abhangen 58
above 31, oben
abyßflüchten, abſchrecken
58
Abstract Nouns 74,
82, 84, 87, 127
accept 159^{rh}
Accusative before
Verb 119^a, 107^x
ačh, ache, áčhjen 108^{ad}
actor 80, Suf. -or.
actual 130, wírlích
adduce 61, beibringen
Adel, æthel 165^{bh}
Adjective used as
Noun 117^g, 125^{az},
130^{af}, 139ⁱ, 141^{af}
Adj.-Prefixes 77-79
— Suffixes 89-100
against 9, 26, gegen
Ahn ancestor 168
“ain fireside” 36, 1.7
airt 151, Órt
Albert 23
allein alone 37, ein
allude 59, anspielen
alt, älter 6, 33, 115^x
Altan, Altar 164, 156^{eh}

am 107, 109
amiss 76, mißlich
amongst 9, 157^{en}
an, a, from one 36
an Vb.-Pr. 58
—blícken 58
ander other 32
“ane anither” 36
anfahren 58, 133^g
—fassen 59
Angesicht 105^f, 140
Angst, anguish 150
anhangen, Anhang, An-
hänger 20, 59
animate 41, Suf. -ate
anklopfen, annehmen,
ansehen, ansehen, an-
spielen, anstoßen 59
ans 147
anxiety, &c. 150^{bx}
Apfel apple 28
appendix 59, Anhang
Article, see Def. Art.
aspect 140^y
ass 134, Ejel
assist 61, beistehen
astound, astonish 10,
48, staunen
aſſ ate, from essen
-ate, Vb.-Suf. 40-1
Athel- 5, edel; 165^{bh}
Athem, atmosphere
122
Au becomes E, Ea 34
auch 22, 34, 149^{be}
auf, Vb.-Pr. 59; op-
posed to zu 72

— Einmal 162
Aufgang 110
aufgehen, aufheben, auf-
richten 59
aufsthun *dup* 60, 122^{ag}
Auge eye 25
aught 23, icht
aus, Vb.-Pr. 60
— liefern 61
— nehmen, aufrufen,
ausspeien 60
— theilen, austrinken,
auswandern 61
Auxiliary haben or seyn
left out 156^{ee}, 157^{et}
awake 48, erwachen
aware 78, gewahr
“ax” for ask 17

B

B. and W 28, *Obs.*
B becomes F, V, W 30
Bačh beck 22
bald 33
Band 143, 159^{fk}
-bar, Adj.-Suf. 90
—, -los 98
barmherzig 93, 152^{eo}
barrow 25, bergen
batter 100, Suf. -er
Baum beam 34
bay, bight 22 (*d*)
be, Adj.-Pr. 78
—, Vb.-Pr. 41; ent 44
bead 6, bitten, beten
beautify 56, verschönen

Becher beaker 22
 bedächtig 92, 160
 —denken 41
 bedew, bewail 41
 bedight 22 (*d*)
 bedräuen, bedrohen 41
 beech 19, Buche
 beflügeln 41, 111^{aa}
 —freien 42
 —gehren, Begier 42,
 163^{ai}
 —gleiten, beglücken,
 begrißen 42
 behead 44, enthaupten
 behend, hand-y 78
 —herrjchen 42
 behest 165^{bk}
 bei, Vb.-Pr. 61
 —bringen 61
 beide both 4, 36
 Bein bone 36
 beispringen, beistehen 61
 beißen bite, &c. 12
 bekannt 136^b
 Bekanntschaft 87, 88
 bekleiden 44, ent
 —fränzen, beladen 42
 —lagern beleaguer
 163^{ap}
 believe 129^w
 bemühen 41
 beneath 5, nieder
 bequem 78
 bereave 152^{ew}, 30, 34
 bereit read-y 78
 bereuen 42, 144
 bergen, &c. 25, 111^{aa}
 berühren 42
 —schreiben 42
 Beschützer 43, 118
 beseech 22
 beforgt 176^s
 besser better 13
 Bestand 144^k
 bestürzen 43
 betide 139, Zeit
 betroth 119^b
 Bette bed 6
 Bettler 101

bewahren, bewähren 43
 bewail, bewitch 41
 bewegen [wag] move 41
 —wußt 129^{ac}
 —zählen 41, 146
 —zwingen 43
 biegen bow, &c. 26
 bight, bay 22 (*d*)
 Bild 117ⁱ, 159^{rk}
 birch, birk Birke 19
 birgst, from bergen
 Bischof bishop, from
 episcop-os 156^{eh}
 Biß, Bischen 12
 bit, bite 12, beißen
 Bitte, bitten 6, 126^{bi}
 blähen 25, 36
 blast, blare blasen 14
 Blatt blade 6
 bleich bleach 19
 Blick, bliden look 166^{bo}
 blieb, from bleiben 111
 blow blähen 36; blühen
 38
 blühen, Blüthe 38, 74,
 N.B.
 blutig 92
 boast 156^{ed}
 Bogen 26
 book 19, Buche
 bore 5, oder
 bergen borrow, bor-
 ough, &c. 26, 111^{aa}
 bosky, bushy 17
 bot, Bote, from bieten
 bow 26, biegen
 boy, knave 105^c
 bracelet 81, Suf. -let
 "braid seas atween
 us" 37, List (*b*)
 Brand, brand, brandy,
 Branntwein, braun
 152^{et}
 brat, brood 6, Brut
 Braut bride 6
 breach 19, Bruch
 breit 6, 36, 167
 brennen burn 152^{et}
 Bretwalda 108^z
 bridge, brig, Brücke 19
 Broad vowels become
 Narrow 33, N.B.
 Brod bread 34
 brool brüllen 161
 brother 3, column 2
 brown 152^{et}
 Bruch, Brücke 19
 Bruder 3, column 2
 Brut brood 6
 Bube, Knabe 105
 Buch, Buche 19, 22
 bücken 156^{eg}
 Bund, Band 159^{rk}
 bundle 81, Suf. -le
 Burg, Bürger 25, 111^{aa}
 Bürg-, bürgen, Bürg-
 schaft 111^{aa}, 143,
 157^{et}
 burgess burgher 19
 -burgh, -bury 111^{aa}
 burrow 25, bergen
 Busen 31

C

canis, houn-d 9
 canny 177^{ab}
 Canongate 13, Gasse
 Causative Verbs 148^{ay}
 cavalier 119^a
 Gh becomes Ch soft,
 G soft 18; K 22;
 Gh, rarely F, or is
 dropt 23
 chaffer 20, faufen
 chain 140, Kette
 chalice 170ⁱ, 156^{eh}
 chalk, chamber, &c. 20
 champion 159^b
 Changes of Sound
 1-38
 chapman, cheap,
 Cheapside, Chip-
 ping 20 faufen
 checkmate 137, matt
 -chen, Noun-Suf. 81,
 137^j
 chevalier 119^a

- childish, childlike 98,
N.B.
- Chor**, choir, chorus
from Greek 156^{eh}
- church, *kirk* 19
- churchwarden 155^{dx}
- Classes of Sound 1
- cloister 124^{at}, 156^{eh}
- close, closet 113^a,
124^{at}
- club 129^w
- cognosco, scio* 116^b
- Collective Nouns 73,
88
- come in, go in 67
- Comparison of -eu,
-iht, -ig 94
- comprehend 114ⁿ
- Concrete Nouns 74, 84
- connaître, savoir* 116^b
- conscience, conscious
76, 116^b, 129^{ac}
- contradict 57, wider
- cook, cake 23, *Röch*
- "coppersky" 94, note
- could 31, b
- courage 134, *Muth*
- course 154^{dj}
- crab, craw, cray 177^{ac}
- crusade 120^a
- cunning, *canny* 177^{ab}
- curdle 100, Suf. -le
- curt, curtail 145^v
- D**
- D added after N, &c. 9
- D** becomes Th 4
- =d, -t, -th) Noun-Suf.
-d, -t, -th) 74, N.B.
- da there 4; then 123,
line 9; da bin ich
here am I, 157
- dabei 168
- Dach thatch 5, 19, 117
- daher, Vb.-Pr. 67
- kommen 67
- dahin, Vb.-Pr. 67
- dahinziehen 67
- Dame 139
- Dampfsschiff 28
- dann then 5
- dannen thence 5
- danfen, Dank, danf-
bar, Dankbarkeit 5,
90, 82, 166^{bo}
- dar, Vb.-Pr. 62
- an, dran 134
- auf, drauf 162
- aus 161
- ein, drein 140
- darf, from dürfen
- darführen 62
- darling 81, Suf.-ling
- darstellen 62
- über, drüben 124
- über, drüber 113
- um, drum therefore
- das, daß 5, 13
- Dative used for Posses-
sive 111^{ab}, 151^{ci}
- dauern endure 170
- daughter 3, column 3
- day, daily 27, 97
- de, Noun-Suf. 74,
N.B.
- deal, dole, Theil 8, 37,
129, 178^{ag}
- dean 10
- death 6, 8, 35, Tod
- debark 62, ein
- decay 53, verfallen
- deck 53, 117ⁱ
- deed 8, 74, N.B.
- deep 8, 30 tief
- deer 163^{aj}
- Def. Article used for
Poss. Pron. 120^k;
with Dative 111^{ab},
151^{ci}; before Abstr.
Nouns 127^e; as
Dem. Pron. 156^{ec}
- Deity 83
- denken think 5
- denn then 5
- dentist 12, 32, Zahns
- depend 58, abhangen
- der *the*, used for *my*,
thy, &c. 120^k; with
to me, &c. 111^{ab},
151^{ci}; for *this, that*
156^{ec}
- descend 165^{bd}
- describe 42, beschreiben
- deß, dessen 156
- detect 44, entdecken;
117ⁱ
- deter 58, abschrecken
- deutsch, Dutch 95
- Diagram:Compounds
of her and hin 67
- dicht 5, 23
- dies this 5
- digit 27, note
- dike 19, Teich
- Diminutives 81, 137^v
- Ding thing 5
- Diphthongs au, ei 33
- disaster 77, Unstern
- Distel thistle 5
- ditch, dike 19
- do 8, thun
- doch though 5, 23; why
127^f; after all 159^{fg}
- doff, don 122^{ag}
- Döch 19
- dole, see deal
- dom, Noun-Suf. 80,
87, -thum
- Don, Donna 139ⁱ
- Donner 5, 10, 37
—stag 5
- doppelt 10, 162
- Dorf thorp 5, 29
- double 162, doppelt
- doubt, dubious 176^v
- dough 27, 37, Teig
- doughty 8, 24, tüchtig
- dozen 10
- Drache dragon 118^s
- draft, drag, drain 25;
Etymol. Treitragen
- draggle 100, Suf. -le
- Draht thread 6
- dran thereon 134
- drauf thereupon 162

draught 21, 25; Etymol. Tree tragen
 draußen 138
 draw 25; Etymol. Tree
 tragen
 drawl, dribble, &c. 102
 dray 21, 25; Etymol.
 Tree tragen
 dreary 94, traurig
 dredge 18; Etymol.
 Tree tragen
 drehen "throw," turn;
 Draht 6, 165^{hk}
 drei, dreimal 5, 112^{an}
 drein 140
 dreißig thirty 13
 drench, drink 148^{ay}
 dringen 5, 141, line
 13
 drip, dribble, triefen
 &c. 8, 30, 102
 dritte third 5, 6, 159
 droben 124
 drohen threaten 41
 drone, drought 25;
 Etymol. Tree tragen
 "dronded" 9
 drüben, drüber 113, 124
 drudge 18; Etymol.
 Tree tragen
 drum, *see* darum
 dry, drought 22 (d)
 Du, duzen 104
 due, duty, debt 107^o
 Duft steam, smell
 duke, duct, &c. Lat.
 duc-, Etymol. Tree
 ziehen
 dunkel dingy 19
 duo, zwei 162^{ac}, 176^v
 dup, do up, 122^{ag}
 duplicity 162^{ae}
 durh 5, 23, 38
 , Vb.-Pr. Insep. 43
 , — Sep. 62
 Durchfahrt 5, 107^a
 durchgehen 43
 dürfen dare 141^{ae}, 166

Dutch 95, deutsch
 Dutzend 10

 E
 E becomes A, 35
 — O, 36
 =e, Noun-Suf., from
 Adj. 82; from Verbs
 126^{bi}
 ear, east, Easter 34,
 Öhr, Öst, Östern
 eat 13, essen; 11, note
 eben even 30
 Ecke, Egge edge 19
 edel, Edelfrau 5, 165
 educate, Lat. *duc-*,
 Etymol. Tree ziehen
 egg, eyry 25, note
 Ehrsucht 163^{an}
 Ei becomes O, Oa 36
 Ei egg 25, note
 =ei, Noun-Suf. 83
 Eiche oak 23, 36
 Eid oath 5, 37
 Eifersucht 163^{an}
 eigen own 26, 37
 —tlich 10, 96
 Eile, eilen 151, lines
 1, 11
 eif, elf, eleven 28
 ein, allein, Verein 37,
 55, 147^{al}
 ein, Vb.-Pr. 62
 —drücken 63
 —fältig 6, 92
 —gehen 63
 —mal 112^{an}, 162^{ag}
 —es 141
 —sam 99
 —schentken, einschiffen,
 einschlafen, einsehen,
 Einsicht, einsingen 63
 einst 173
 einstürmen, eintanzen,
 einwandern, einwie-
 gen 63
 either 34, oder

eke 22, 34, auch
 =el, Noun-Suf. 81
 , Vb.-Suf. 101
 elapse 54, verstreichen
 elope 29, laufen
 Eltern 6, 115
 embark 62, ein
 embellish 56, verföh-
 nern
 embrace 51, umarmen
 emit 54, versenden
 empfangen 166
 empor, Vb.-Pr. 63
 — ziehen 63
 =en becomes -om 31
 =en, =ern, Adj.-Suf. 90
 , icht, -ig 94, N.B.
 -en, Vb.-Suf. 41
 endlisch 96
 Engel angel 20
 englisch, Englisch 95
 English a branch of
 Low German 160^h;
 Engl. form of a
 word often the older
 11, note; Engl.
 prefers Soft sounds
 19
 engrave 30, graben
 enough 26, 78 genug
 ent, Vb.-Pr. 44
 —decken 44
 entertain 52, unter
 entfallen 44
 entgegen, Vb.-Pr. 64
 —kommen, &c. 64
 entgegnen 144
 entre 52, unter
 entreißen, entrinnen,
 entschuldigen 45
 entsetzen 45, 178^{ad}
 —weichen 45, 132^c
 —wickeln 45
 —wöhnen 45
 er, Vb.-Pr. 46; opposed
 to ent 44
 =er, Noun-Suf. 85
 =er, Vb.-Suf. 101-2

-er, Vb.-Suf. 100
 erbarmen 46, 152
 Erbe, Erbtheil 109,
 178^{as}
 erbllassen, erbleichen 48
 Erde earth 5
 erdröhnen 46
 -erei, Noun-Suf. 83
 erfahren, ergehen, er-
 göhen, ergreifen, er-
 heben, erhöhen 46
 erfrischen 48
 Erinnyses 181
 erjagen 46
 -kennen 48
 -kiesen 14, 20, 134^b
 -lassen 47
 -lauben 129^w
 Erle, Erlkönig 35
 erlegen 47
 -leiden 48
 -mannen 44, ent
 -matten, erreichen, er-
 schauen 47
 -neuen, erscheinen 48
 -schlagen, erschöpfen
 47
 -staunen 48
 -steigen, extreten 47
 -wachen 48
 -wachsen, erwarten,
 erwürgen 47
 -ery, Noun-Suf. 83-4
 erzählen 146^{ac}
 es it 13; there 107^v
 esentcheon, esquire
 118^p
 Esel ass, 134
 essen eat 13; 11, note
 establish, stable 144^k
 Ethel- 5, 165 edel
 euch you 23
 exalt 164^{as}
 except, exclaim 60,
 aus
 exhaust 47, erschöpfen
 eye 25, Auge
 eyry 25, note

F
 ðy becomes P or V, 28
 ðaden 31
 ðähre ferry 149^{bk}
 fahren, reiten 105^a
 faire conduire 158^{ra}
 fallen, fällen 148^{ay}
 Falte fold 6, 33
 fand, from finden
 fang fangen 166^{bl}
 fare, ferry 107^a
 ðaß vat 13, 28
 father 3, column 1
 Feier 123, 156^{eh}
 Feind 131
 — schaft 88
 ðels fell 118
 fern far 35
 fertilize 41, Suf. -ize
 fest fast 35
 ðest 114, 156^{eh}
 festlich festive 96
 fett fat 35
 fie, fiend 131, Feind
 fiel, from fallen
 Figurative meaning
 given by Insep. Vb.-
 Prefixes 50, 52
 finger 166^{bl}, 180, line
 16
 ðingerhut 7, hüthen
 firebrand 152^{ct}
 first 130^{ah}
 five, fifty 27, 32, fünf
 flail 26, ðlegel
 flask 17, ðlasche
 flea, fledge 20, 111^{ae}
 Fleetstreet 13, ðluß
 flehen 145, line 1
 flesh, floße 16, 17
 fliegen, fliehen, fließen,
 &c. 111^{ae}
 float, flood, flow 111^{ae}
 floß 112, from fließen
 flott, Flotte 111^{ae}
 flüchten 156^{eg}
 ðluft, ðlug, ðlügel,
 &c. 111^{ae}

fliigge fledge 20
 ðluß 111^{ae}, 159^{rk}
 ðlu-th floo-d 74, N.B.
 fly 26 fliegen
 foe 131, Feind
 folgen follow 26
 fondle 100, Suf. -le
 foolery, &c. 84
 for, Prepos. 38, für
 for, Vb.-Pr. in forgo,
 &c. 52, ver
 fore, Vb.-Pr. in fore-
 going, &c. 70 vor
 forlorn, verloren 14,
 54, 134^h, 166^a
 fort, Vb.-Pr. 64
 — eilen 64, a and b
 — wandeln 64, b
 — ziehen 64, a
 fowl 27, Vogel
 fragile 97, last line
 Fräulein 81, 137^j, 164
 Frederick, freien, Frei-
 tag 125^{bg}
 fremd foreign 176
 French prefers Soft
 sounds 18
 Freude 74, N.B.; 125^{bg}
 freudig, freudenlos,
 freudvoll 92, 98
 freuen, Freund 125^{bg}
 Freundin 87
 freundlich 96
 Friede, Friedrich 125^{bg}
 frieren freeze 14, 166^a
 frisch fresh, frisky 17
 frisiren frizzile 103
 froh, fröhlich, frolic 96,
 125^{bg}
 frore, frozen 166^a
 frisch, Fröschlein 166
 Frucht fruit 23
 fructify 41, Suf. -fy
 Frühling 81
 Füchsin vixen 87
 fünf five 32
 Zug 170ⁱ
 fuhr, from fahren
 führen 107

function 170ⁱ
 furcht, furchtbar 23, 90
 furlough 129^w
 Fürst 130
 fürwahr veri-ly 178
 Fuß foot 13
 -fy, Vb.-Suf. 41

G

G becomes G soft, J,
 Ch soft 18; Gh, W,
 Y, I, or Dropt 24-5
 gab, Gabe 142^{al}
 gaffen gape 29
 gähnen yawn 25, 26
 gainsay 26, gegen
 gamble 100, Suf. -le
 "gang with me" 110^s
 Gans 32
 gar yare 26
 garden, garth 21 (b)
 Gäst guest 34
 gaſtbar 90
 gait, gate 13, Gasse
 ge, Adj. Pr. 78
 —, Noun-Pr. 73
 —, Vb.-Pr. 48
 —, often coalesces
 with Root 170ⁱ
 —same as *co*, *con* 172^t
 —bären 49
 Gebäude 74
 —bein 73
 geben give 30
 gebeut, for gebietet 146
 Gebieter 49, 85
 —birge 73
 —biß, beißen 12, 74
 —brüder 73
 —brüll 74
 —burt 49; 74, N.B.
 —danke 74
 gedenken 48
 Gefahr 75
 gefallen 49
 Gefühl 75
 geheim 78
 gehen go 36
 gehorjam 99

gelangen 49, 110
 —lassen 165
 gelb yellow 26, 30
 Geleit 75
 gelingen 49, 158^{ra}, 170ⁱ
 gellen yell 26
 geloben, Gelübde 129^w
 gemäß meet 78
 Gemüth 134^f
 genoß 78
 geneien 49, 170ⁱ
 Genitive first 112^{ak}
 Genoß 159^{rk}
 genug enough 26, 78
 gerathen turn out 178
 German a kindred
 tongue iii, its forms
 not always older 11,
 note; prefers Hard
 sounds 19
 gern 79, 169^a
 Geroll, Gesang 75
 geschehen, Geschichte
 49; 74, N.B.
 Geschenk 75
 geschwäzig 75, 92
 —ſchwind 78
 Gesicht, Gestade, Ge-
 stalt 105, 74-5, N.B.
 gestehen 49
 gestern yesterday 26
 Gestirn 74
 —traide 76, Etymol.
 Tree tragen
 getreu, gewähr 78
 —troffen, from treffen
 gewähren 49
 Gewalt 76, 108
 gewaltig 92
 Gewand 76, 106
 gewarten 49
 Gewicht 76^{*}
 gewinnen 49, 170ⁱ
 Gewissen 76, 129^{ao}
 gewiß 78
 —wöhnen 49
 Gewölbe 76
 Gh sounded F, 21(c);
 not sounded, yet

shows derivation
 22
 gieb, from geben
 gigantijch 95
 ging, from gehen
 girdle, girth 4, 6, 7
 glänzen glint 11
 glauben, &c. 129^w, 170ⁱ
 gleed Gluth 74, N.B.
 gleich 78, gelich; 170ⁱ
 Gleichheit, Gleidniß 83
 Glück 75, Gelück: 170
 glücklich 96
 glühen, Gluth 38, 74
 N.B.
 Gnade, gnädig 92
 gnaw 26, nagen
 go in, come in 67
 golden, gülden 91, 106
 gönnen 146
 goose, gander 32
 gossip 131ⁱ
 Gottheit 83
 "gown-d, orphan-t" 9
 Grab, graben 30, 159^{rk}
 Graf reeve 28
 grau, grauen, gräulich
 96, 97, 163, 165^{bg}
 graus, grausen, graus-
 lich 97, 108^{ab}, 172^u
 grave Grab 30
 greifen gripe 29, 177^{ac}
 Greis 131
 Gretchen 81
 grimmig 92
 gripe, grab 177^{ac}
 grizzled 96, graulich
 grizzly 97, grauslich
 groß, Größe 13, 35, 83
 Grube groove, grub
 30, graben
 grüßen greet 13
 guard, guardian 107^p
 guarantee, grant 49,
 gewähren
 gülden, see golden
 Kunst 146^{ad}
 gut, Güte, gütig, Gü-
 tigkeit 7, 83, 92

H

H becomes Gh, W, 25
 haaricht, haarig 92; 94
N.B.
 haben, Habe 30, 126^{bi}
 habit 49, gewöhnen
 -haft, Adj.-Suf. 91
 hail, hale, hallow 120ⁿ
 hair-garment 124^{ar}
 halb half 30
 Hall, hallen 167^e, 173^z
 halloo 138^e
 halt, hold 7, 33
 handle 100, Suf. -le
 Handschuh 159
 Hanf 3, column 6
 hängen, hängen 148^{ay}
 hanker 100, Suf. -er
 Hard (Throat) sounds
 in Germ. and Scotch
 become Soft (Hissing)
 sounds in Engl. 18, 19
 hären 91; 94, *N.B.*
 hark, hearken 156^{eg}
 Hässcher 85
 Hase hare 14, 134^h
 hassen, häßlich 13, 97
 hat, hood, hut 155^{dp}
 Haupt head 7
 Haut hide 155^{dp}
 haversack 30
 head 7, Haupt
 —becomes tail 41
 -head, Noun-Suf. 80, 82
 heal, health 120ⁿ
 heath, heathen 5
 heben heave 30
 Hecke, hecken 20, 156^{eg}
 heed 155^{dp}
 heftig 93
 heggen cherish 156^{eg}
 height 80, Suf. -t
 heil, heilig, Heilgthum,
 Heiland, heilsam 37,
 88, 93, 99, 120
 heim, Vb.-Pr. 64

heimetlen, heimschiffen 65
 heimisch of home 95
 Heimsucht 163^{an}
 heiß hot 13, 37
 -heit, Noun-Suf. 82
 hemp 3, column 6
 henchman 20, hängen
 henken, Henker 85,
 156^{eg}
 her, Vb.-Pr. 65
 —, "come" 65, 67
 —, Compounds of, 66
 herab, Vb.-Pr. 67
 —gießen 67
 heraus, heraus 67
 herbei 181
 Herbst 30
 herein, Vb.-Pr. 67
 —lassen 67
 hernieder 67, 123
 herrisch, herrlich 98
 Herrlichkeit 83
 herrschen, Herrscher 42,
 85
 herrufen 65
 herüber 67
 herum, Vb.-Pr. 65
 —lagern 65
 herunter, Vb.-Pr. 67
 —neigen, &c., 68
 hervor, Vb.-Pr. 65
 —nehmen, &c. 66
 herwehen 65
 Herz heart 11
 herzhaft 91
 —ig 93
 Herzog, Etymol. Tree
 ziehen
 hest 165^{bk}
 heute 176, line 20
 hide 155^{dp}
 High German 160^h
 Higher Meaning, some
 words get 105^c, 140^s
 hight 165^{bk}
 himmlisch 95
 hin, Vb.-Pr. 66
 —Compounds of, 66
 hin; "go" 65, 67
 —, her 65
 hinab, Vb.-Pr. 67
 —reisen 67, 148
 —steigen 165^{bd}
 hinauf, hinaus 67
 hinder 100, Suf. -er
 hinein, Vb.-Pr. 67
 hineinfallen, &c. 67
 hinge 20, Hänge
 hinkriechen, hinschauen,
 hintreiben, hintreten
 66
 hinüber, hinunter 67
 hinwerfen 66
 Hissing-sounds 11-18;
 become Tongue-
 sounds 11-13
 hobble 100, Suf. -le
 hoch, Vb.-Pr. 68
 —beglüten 68, 42
 —, hohe 24, 25
 Hoffen, Hoffnung 110
 Höhe, Hoheit 83
 Höhle 83, 118
 hold 7, 33, halten
 holy, whole 37, 120ⁿ
 hood 7, 155, hüthen
 -hood, Noun-Suf. 80,
 82
 horch, hark 156^{eg}
 hospitable 90, gastbar
 Hund hound, canis 9
 hut Hut, Huth, hüthen,
 Hüther, Hütte 7,
 155^{dp}

I

iceberg 118^a
 -ich, Noun-Suf. 144^j
 -icht, Adj.-Suf. 91
 —, -en, -ig 94, *N.B.*
 Jächts 24, note
 ie becomes O 37
 -ig, Adj.-Suf. 92
 —, -en, -icht, 94, *N.B.*
 —, -los 98
 —, Vb.-Suf. 103

illtreat, maltreat 40
im, vom, &c. 116
immer, nimmer 111
-in, Noun-Suf. 87
-ine, -en, Noun-Suf.
81
Infinitive used as a
Noun 110^a, 165^{bg}
-ing, Noun-Suf. 84, b
inhabit 49, gewöhnen
inquire, inquest 163^{ai}
ins 125
Insel, insula, isola,
isla, île 180
Insep. Verb-Prefixes
40; make a verb
Transitive 43, 51;
and Figurative 50,
52
insight 63, einsehen
inspect, respect 113ⁱ
instead 144^k
inter- 52, unter
interloper 29, laufen
interrupt 52, unter
introduce 67, hinein
inventiren 103
inwit 129^{ac}
-ir, Vb.-Suf. 103
irden 91
irdisch 95
is, are 14
-ish, Adj.-Suf. 95
—, -lich, 98, N.B.
-ish, Adj. Suf. 95, 98
isle 180^{ai}
“it is said” 117ⁿ
-ive, Adj.-Suf. 89
-ize, Vb.-Suf. 41

J

jagen, Jäger, Jagd,
85; 74, N.B.
jäh sudden, steep
Jahr, jährig 34, 93
jauchzen 104
Jemand 10
jener yonder 10, 36

Johanniswürmchen
132
Jugend youth 5, 26, 32
Jungfer 164^{az}
Jungfrau 115
Jüngling 81

K

Æ becomes Ch soft,
G soft 18
Käfer Käff, Kalf, &c. 20
kalt cold 7, 33
kam 112, from kommen
Kämpfbegier 163
— Spiel 159
Kanzler, Kapelle, Karl,
Käse &c. 20
Katze cat 11
fauen chew 20
taufen, Kaufmann 20
-feit, Noun-Suf. 82
Kelch 170ⁱ, 156^{eh}
ken, canny 177^{ab}
kennen, wissen 116^b
Kette 140
-kin, Noun-Suf. 81
Kind 105
kindisch, kindlich 98
king 145, König
kinsman 105, Kind
Kirche kirk, church 19
kitchen 20, Küche
Klage, klagen 115, 126
Kleid, Kleiden 5, 37
Kloster, 124, 156^{eh}, 167
Knabe knave 30, 105
Knall clap, crash 173^z
Knecht knight 24, 140^s
— schaft 88
know 116^b
knuckle 81, Knöchel

Koch, Kochen 23
König, können 145
Königin queen 87
königlich 96
frachen crack 23
frästig 171
Krähe, Krähen 25, 36

Kreuz, Kreuzzug 120,
156^{eh}
Krieg 177
froh 132, from friecken
summervoll 100
Kunde 177^{ab}; 74, N.B.
fundig canny 93
Kur, Kurfürst 14, 134^h
kurz curt 11, 145

L

Labe, laben 142
lachen, lächeln 24, 101
ladder 7, leiten
laden load 33
ladle 81, Suf. -le
lag, Lager 26, 163
laggar-d, braggart-t 9
lair Lager 26, 163
landgrave 28, Graf
landscape 16, 88
lang long 33
— haarig 92
larch, lark 35, Lerche
“larned” 35, note
lassen let 13, 34, 141^{ag},
158^{fa}
Last load, from laden
Latin words, how introduced 118^s, 156^{eh}
Laub 30, 34
Lauf, laufen 29, 154,
159^{ek}
Laune, gelauget 177
laut loud 7
lay, layer 26, 163^{ap}
-le, Noun-Suf. 81
-le, Vb.-Suf. 100
leaguer 163^{ap}
learn 129^y
leave, believe 129^w
leben, Leben, lebendig,
lebhaft 30, 91, 93
leer, Leere 83
legen lay 148^{ay}
Lehre, Lehrling 36, 81
Leiche 20, 126
leicht light, easy 24

Leid [loth] grief, harm
 -lein, Noun-Suf. 81,
 137^j
 leiten, Leiter, Leitstern,
 7, 37
 Lent Lenz 11, 109
 Lerche 20, 23, 35
 lernen learn 129^y
 -less, Adj.-Suf. 98
 -let, Noun-Suf. 81
 Len 162
 leuchten 24
 -lich, Adj.-Suf. 24, 96
 —, -isch, 98, *N.B.*
 Lichfield 126^{bj}
 Licht light 24
 lick, luck 75
 lie 26, liegen, lägen
 lieb, Liebe, lieben 30
 37, 126^{bi}
 Liebchen 82, 137^j
 lieblich 97
 Lied lay 115^a
 ließ 138, from laufen
 lief, liever 30, lieb
 liefern 28
 liegen, legen 26, 148^{ay}
 ließ 109, from lassen
 lifeguard 30, Leib
 light, 24, leicht, Licht
 -ling, Noun-Suf. 81
 linger 100, Suf. -er
 Lip - sounds 27-31;
 Throat-sounds
 change into 23-7
 listeth 128ⁱ
 loadstar, loadstone 37
 Löb, loben 129^w, 166
 Lohn, lohnen 159^{rk}
 lonesome 99, einsam
 Löss lot 13
 Löwe 116^e, 118^s
 lore Lehre 36, 129
 lorn, forlorn 54, 134^h
 -los, Adj.-Suf. 98
 los, Vb.-Pr. 68
 — reißen 68
 lösen 146
 lost, lorn 134^h

Low German 160^h
 Löwengarten 159
 Lower Meaning, some
 words get, 105^c,
 140^s
 luck, see Glück
 lägen lie 26
 Lungensucht 163^{an}
 Lust 128
 lustig "lusty" 93
 -ly, Adj.-Suf. 96, 98
 lych-gate, lyke-wake
 126, Leiche

 M
 machen 23
 Macht, mächtig 24, 93
 Mädchen 82, 137
 made, maked 22 (*d*)
 Madonna 139ⁱ
 mag may 119^g
 Magd maid 26
 Magen maw 26
 magnify 41, Suf. -fy
 Mat, 112^{an}
 malen, Gemälde 75
 maltreat, illtreat 40
 Mamachen 82
 man sagt 117ⁿ
 man, woman or thing
 left out 130^{ar}, 139ⁱ,
 141^{af}
 manch 93, manning
 manhood, manly, &c.
 80
 Mann, Mensch 95, 135
 Männer, Männer 120
 many 93, manning
 margrave 28, Graf
 Marmor 117, 118^s
 mästenreich 176
 Mass Messe 35, 156^{eh}
 matt 137
 Matte mead 7, 33
 maudlin 22 (*d*)
 Maulthier 118
 maw 26, Magen
 mayor, magistrate 18

mead 7, Matte, Meth
 Meer 113
 Meerschaum 17
 meet, mete 78, gemäß
 mehr more 36
 mein of me 135
 meist most 37
 melt, schmelzen 167^e
 Menge 157
 Mensch, Mann 95, 135
 menschlich, männlich 96,
 135^j
 mere 113, Meer
 Messe 35, 156^{eh}
 messen, gemäß 13, 78
 Meth mead 7
 mewing miauen 32-3
 might 24, mögen
 mingle 157^{en}
 mint 11, Münze
 mir den Arm for "my
 arm" 151^{ci}
 mischen mix 17
 miß, Noun-Pr. 76
 —, Vb.-Pr. 50
 — gönnen 50, 146^{ad}
 — trauen 50
 Mißmutig 76, 134^f
 mit, Vb.-Pr. 68
 Mitte, mitten 7, 164
 Mittwoch 7
 mix, miscellany 17
 möchte, mögen 24, 113
 Mönch monk 23, 156^{eh}
 Mond moon 10
 -monger, mongrel
 157^{en}
 mood 134, Muth
 Mord, Mordsjucht 37,
 163
 Morgen 26
 —— roth 147
 morning 26
 morsel 12, beißen
 mouth 32, Mund
 muddle, muffle 100,
 Suf. -le
 mule 118, Maulthier
 multiply 103

Mund mouth 5, 32
 Münster minster, from
monasterion 156^{eh}
 munter sprightly, gay
 Münze 11
 Muth, muthig 93, 134
 Mutter 6
 mutter 100, Suf. -er
 Myrthe 116, 118^s

N

N dropt 31
 nach, Nachbar 24, 132
 —, Vb.-Pr 68
 Nachbarin 87, 132
 Nachen 149
 nächst next 68, nach
 Nacht, nächtlich 24, 96
 Nachtigall 167
 Nagel, nagen 26
 nahe nigh 25
 nahm, from nehmen
 nail 26, Nagel
 Narrow vowels into
 Broad 33, N.B.
 Nose nose 33
 Natural order of the
 Vowels 32
 navy, nautical 149^{bg}
 Nebelfreib 106
 need 7, 108, Noth
 Neid envy 178
 neighbour 24, Nachbar
 nennen to name 168
 -ner, Noun.-Suf. 85
 Netherlands 5, nieder
 Netz net 11
 next 68, nach
 nicht, Nichts 24, icht
 nieder, Vb.-Pr. 69
 —bücken, &c. 69
 niemals 112
 Niemand 10
 niesen sneeze 167^e
 nigh 25, nahe
 nightingale 167^d
 nimm, from nehmen
 nimmer 111^z

-niß, Noun-Suf. 82
 Nominative after
 Verb 119^a
 noontide 139^p
 North prefers Hard
 sounds 19
 Norway, Norwegian 26
 Nose-sounds 31-2
 not, nought 24, icht
 Noth need 108, 178,
 line 4
 Nouns, Masc. (or
 Neut.), bare root of
 Verb 159^{rk}; Fem.,
 Verb-root with
 Suf. -e 126^{bi}
 Noun-Prefixes 73-77
 —Suffixes 80-89

O

O becomes E, Ea, 34
 — — U 37
 ob, oben, ober 31
 Objective before Verb
 107^x, 119^a
 oder or, 5
 offen, öffnen 29, 161
 öffentlich 96, 10
 offering 156^{eh}
 ogle 101, äugeln
 ohne 78, un-
 Ohr ear 35
 on dit 117ⁿ
 once-t, einst 10, 173
 onslaught 15, schlagen
 open 122^{ag}
 Opfer offering 156
 oppose, opposite 64
 or, oder 5
 ordentlich 96, 10
 "orphan-t, gown-d" 9
 Ort airt 151
 Ost, Ostern 35
 other 32, ander
 ought, owe 107, sollen
 over, ab-ove 31, ob
 — step 50, über

P

palace, Palatinate 29,
 Pfalz
 Papachen 81
 parchment, see Perga-
 ment
 pardon, forgive 53
 pawn 10, 29, Pfand
 peach 29, Pfirsche
 peacock 29, Pfau
 peasant 9
 perceive 114ⁿ
 perdition, perish 53
 Pergament 10, 20
 peril 75, Gefahr
 Pf becomes P, 28
 Pfad path 5, 29
 Pfaffe, Pfafferei 84
 Pfalz, Pfalzgraf, Pfand,
 Pfau, Pfesser, Pfefe,
 &c. 29
 Pflicht 20, 24, 29
 pfücken pluck 29
 Pforte 29, 122
 pheasant 10
 Pilgrim 109, 156^{eh}
 splash, splash 167^e
 pledge, plight 156^{ef}
 pocket 81, Suf.-et
 poke, pouch 19
 pope, popery 84
 popinjay 20, Papagei
 popish 98, N.B.
 porter 122, Pförte
 Bracht, prächtig 24
 Prefixes 39-79; all ori-
 ginally Words 76,
 miß; see Adj.-Pr.,
 Noun-Pr., Verb-Pr.
 Preis, preisen 173^z
 prends, comprehends
 114ⁿ
 pretty 24, prächtig
 Priester priest, pres-
 byters elder 156^{eh}
 prince 130^{ah}
 providence 85, -ung
 protect, protégé 117ⁱ

Q

quail 24, *Wachtel*
query, question 163^{ai}

R

R becomes S, Z, 14
Rabe raven 31
rächen wreak 23
rain 26, *Regen*
Rand rim 10
rapid, rapture 152^{cw}
rate, ratio 7, note
Rath rede, riddle 7,
34
rathe, rather 78, be
rauben, *Räuber* 85,
152^{cw}
ready, rathe 78, be
real 130, *wirklich*
recht right 24
recken reach 20
rede, riddle 7, *Rat*
Redner 86
reeve 28, *Graf*
Regen 26
— *Schirm* 17
regieren 103
reich rich; as Adj.-Suf.
125^{bg}; 176, line 18
reichen reach 20
reichlich 96
Reichthum 88
Reihe row 25, 37
Reihen 107
reindeer 8, *Rennthier*
Reinheit, Reinlichkeit 82
reiten, fahren 105
Reiter, Ritter 85, 119
Religious Rites 156^{eh}
require, request 163^{ai}
retten rid 8
Retter 85
Rhede roads 36
rid 8, retten
riddle 7, *Räthsel*
ridge, *rig*, Rücken 19

rief 131, from *rufen*
rieseln 102
rings 160
Riß 173^z
Ritter 85, 119
— *Schäft* 88, 89
roadstead 36
rosig 93
roth red 8, 35; rother
(Wein) port 168
row 107, Reihe
Rücken *rig* 19
rue, ruth 144, bereuen
rufen call
ruffle 100, *Suf.* -le
Ruhe, ruhig 93, 126^{bi}
rühmen 156^{ed}
röhren, berühren 42
rule 26, Regel
Rule of Change in
Sounds 2
-ry, Noun-Suf. 80,
83-4

S

S becomes R, 14, 166^a
— — T 12; yet T is
the older 11, note
S, Sch, as Vb-Pr. 167^e
Saat seed 74, *N.B.*
Säfel 20, 82
saddle, settle 4, 8, 13
Saft sap 10, 29
Sage, Säge, saw 26
sah saw 25, from *sehen*
sail 27, Segel
-sam, Adj.-Suf. 99
sanft soft 32, 33
sang 137, from *singen*
Sänger 85, 119^a, 138
sanf 138, from *sinken*
“servant” 35, note
saß sat 13, from *sitzen*
satchel 20, 82, Säfel
satisfy 55, vergnügen
säuseln 102, 106
savoir, connaitre 116^b
saw 25, sah

saw 26, Säge, Sage
scale, shale, shell 17
scare 17, *Schauern*
scathe 5, 17, Schade
scatter, shatter 17
Scawfell 118, Fels
Sch becomes S, 15
— — Sk, &c. 16
— originally a double
sound 16
Schaar troop, host
Schaf, Schäfer, Schäf-
ferin 29, 34, 86, 87
schaffen shape 29
-chaft, Noun-Suf. 10,
87

Schall, schallen 17, 173^z
Schatten shadow 8
Schatz treasure
schätzen to prize, esteem
178, line 8

Schauen 140

Schaum scum 17

scheinen 131^b, 159^{rk}

Schenk, schenken 63,
172, 173^z

scheu, schauen 135

Schien, from *scheinen*

schießen shoot 13, 37

Schiff, Schiffer 29, 86

schiffen 65, heim

schimmern 102

Schirm 17

Schlacht, schlachten 15,
156

Schlaf, schlafen 15, 34

schlagen 15, 131^o, 143^e

schlau, schleichen 15,
143^c

Schleuse sluice 113^a

schlich, from *schleichen*

schließ, from *schließen*

Schloß 113, 159^{rk}

schloß-claus 167^e

schluchzen 104

schlug, from *schlagen*

Schlüss, Schlüssel 113^a

schmelzen melt 15, 167^e

Schmerz smart 11, 15

schmettern 102, 168
 Schmetterling 82, 133
 schnauben 16, 31
 Schnee snow 16, 36
 Schneider, Schnitter 119^a
 schnurren 16
 schon 15
 schön, verschönern, Schönheit, die Schönnen 56, 83, 140
 school 18, Schule
 schöpfen shape 17
 Schraube 18, 28, Obs.
 schrecken, Schrei 121, 16, 17, 167^e
 schreiben, Schrift 18, 28
 schreiten, Schritt 8, 173^a
 schrieb, from schreiben
 schuf, from schaffen
 Schuhmacher, Schuster 86
 Schuld, schuldig 93, 179
 Schürze 11, 18
 Schuß, Schütze 13, 38
 schütteln 102
 schützen 118^p
 schwach, weich, 23, 167^e
 Schwalbe 16, 31
 Schwall 168, 167^e
 Schwarm 16, 121^a
 schwarz swart 11, 16
 Schweif 16, 29
 Schweiß, Schweiz 16, 120
 Schwert sword 16, 36
 Schwester 3, column 4
 schwimmen, schwingen, schwören 16
 science, con-science 116^b, 129^{ac}
 Scotch more like German in Throat-sounds 18; in Vowels 36; *gae, gate* 13; *kirk, brig, &c.* 19; *lyke Leiche* 126; *aff, lang &c.* 33; *koff, reek* 34, *b; ain, ane,*

braid, &c. 36; *mair, sair, &c.* 36; *maist, stane, &c.* 37; *won 49; canny 93; gae gang 110^s; glint 133; fleach 145; brool 161; airt 151^{ch}*
 scrape, scrub, scurf 28
 scrawl, scribble 28
 screech, shriek 17, 176
 screw 18, 28, Obs.
scudo, scutcheon 118^p
 scuffle, shuffle 17
 scum, skim, skin 17
 scuttle, shuttle 17
se battre 131^e
 seal 27, Siegel
 Seele, Sohle 36
 seem, sham 131^b
 seethe, sodden 4
 Segel sail 26
 sehr sore 36
 seiden 91
selb, selbst self 31; selfsame 166
 selten seldom 8, 31
 jenfen 148^{ay}
 Separ. Vb.-Prefixes 58-73; compared with Insep. 40, 43, 50-1-2; a striking example 164, lines 1-7
 sept 89, Sippenschaft
 settle 100, Suf. -le
 setzen set 148^{ay}
 shall, should 107^o, 179^{ah}
 sham, seem 131^b
 shell, shale, scale 17
 shelter 100, Suf. -er
 sheriff 28, Graf
 Shibboleth 3, 11
 ship, skiff 17, Schiff
 -skip, Noun-Suf. 87
 shriek, screech 17, 176
 shudder 102, schütteln
 shuffle, scuffle 17
 shun, shy 135, scheuen
 shuttle, scuttle 17
 sib, gossip 131ⁱ
 sic, whilk 19, 97
 sicher sicker 23
 Sicht sight 24, 74, N.B.
 sichtbar 90
 siech sick 22
 Siegel seal 27
 sieht, sieht, sieht 107, 122, from jehen
 simple 92, einfältig
 Singer, Sänger 138
 sinken, jenfen 148^{ay}
 Sinn sense, thought
 Sippenschaft 89, 131
 sister 3, column 4
 sitzen, setzen 12, 148^{ay}
 skim, scum 17, schäumen
 skinker 172, Schenk
 skipper 17, 29, 86
 skittles 17
 slay, slaughter, schlagen, &c. 15, 47, 156^{eg}
 sleek, slick, slink 143^c
 slobber 100, Suf. -er
 slot, sluice 113, Schloß
 smatter 102, 168, schmettern
 smelt 15, schmelzen
 smith 5, 15, Schmied
 smug 15, Schmuck
 smile 15, 24 schmeicheln
 snail, snake, sneak 16
 sodden 4
 soft 32, sanft
 Sohle, Seele 36
 solch 19, 38, 97
 sole, soul 36, note
 sollen 107, 179^{ah}
 -some, Adj.-Suf. 99
 Sonne sun 38
 — uschirm 17
 Sorge, jorgen 26, 147^{an}
 soul, sole 36, note

Sounds, six classes of, 1, 2; changes of, 1-38; rule of change 2-4
 South prefers Soft sounds 19; things that came from, 118^s
 spähen spy, &c. 113ⁱ
 sparkle 100, Suf. -le
 spectator, &c. 113ⁱ
 Spersing sparrow 31
 sperren spar 151^{cif}, 167^e
 Spiegel 113
 Spiel, spielen 106, 159^{rk}
 spinster 31, Weib
 spirt, spray, spread 102, sprudeln
 Sprache, sprechen 20, 23
 sprengen 148
 sprich, from sprechen
 sprießen, Sprößling 13
 springen, sprengen 148
 Spruch, 20, 127, 159^{rk}
 sprudeln 102
 Sprung 159^{rk}
 spy, spectator 113ⁱ
 squall 17, schallen
 squander 18, 148^{ay}
 squire, scutiger 118^p, 140^s
 St. John's worm 132
 Stab, stable, stadholder, Stadt, staff, stage, stale, stall 144^k
 Stamm stem 34
 stand, from stehen 32
 starb 138, from sterben
 starch, stare, stark, stärken, starr, starren 20, 144^k
 starve 144^m, 167^e
 state, station, statue, statute 144^k
 statt, anstatt 8, 144^k
 statute 75, Gesetz
 staunen 48, 140

stead, steady 144^k
 stechen, Stich 20, 23
 Steg, stehen, steif, steigen, Stelze 118^r, 144^k, 156^{eg}
 Stein stone 37
 -ster, Noun-Suf. 85-6
 -ster, Noun-Suf. 86, b
 sterben 31, 35, 144
 sterblich 97
 Stern star 35
 stick, stitch 18, 20
 stiff, stilt, stint 144^k
 stile, stirrup 118^r
 Stimme voice 136
 stolz, Stolz 144^k
 stood, 32 stand
 stound 48, 140
 Strahl, strahlen 159^{rk}
 strangle 100, Suf. -le
 Straße street, Stratford 13, 154
 streben, Streben 31
 strecken stretch 20
 Streich stroke 23, 37
 Streif, streifen 29
 Strengthened Verbs 156^{eg}
 streuen, Stroh 25, 135
 Strom stream 35
 Strong and Weak roots 119^a, 138^a, 143^g
 studiren 103
 Stunde 126^{bi}, 150
 Sturm, stürmen 38, 63
 stürzen start, bestürzen startle 43
 succour 61, beispringen
 such solch 19, 38, 97
 suchen seek 23
 Sucht 163^{am}
 Suffixes 80-104, 41; all originally Words 76, miß; see Adj.-Suf., Noun-Suf., Verb-Suf.
 suggest 61, beibringen
 sultry 16, schwül

üß sweet 13
 swaddle 100, Suf. -le
 swag, sway 27
 sweeten 41, Suf. -en
 sweester 3, column 4
 Switzerland 120^m

T

T added after N, &c. 9; 96, note
 T becomes D or Th 6
 -t, -th, -the | Noun-Suf.
 -t, -th, -d | 74, N.B.
 Tag, täglich 8, 27, 97
 tail becomes head 41
 tailor 119^a
 tale, tallage, tallyman 146^{ac}
 Tanz, tanzen 8, 159^{rk}
 taujend thousand 6
 teach 27, note
 team 117, ziehen
 -teen 27, note
 Teich 19
 tell, tale 146^{ac}
 ten, -teen, -ty 27
 Teufel 3, column 5
 -th, | Noun-Suf. 74,
 -th, | N.B.
 thack, thatch 19, 117ⁱ
 Thal, Thälchen 8, 82
 Thaler 8, 33
 thane, thegn 25, Degen
 that did, from thun
 That 34, 121, 74 N.B.
 thatch 19, 117, Dach
 Thau dew 8
 theilen deal, Theil dole,
 zertheilen, austheilen
 8, 37, 58, 61, 178^{ag}
 "there lived," es lebte
 107^v
 theuer dear 7
 "they say" 117ⁿ
 third dritte 5, 6, 159
 Thier 8, 118^s, 163^{aj}
 Thor, Thür 8

- thoroughfare Durch-
 fahrt 5, 107^a
 thorp Dorf 5, 29
 thränentleer 158
 Throat-sounds 17-27;
 change to Hissing-
 sounds 18; to Lip-
 sounds 21-5; inter-
 change or disapp-
 ear 21-5
 throttle 100, Suf. -le
 through durch 5, 22-3
 -thum, Noun-Suf. 87
 thun do 8
 thunder 10
 Thursday 5, Donner
 tide, tiding 139, Zeit
 tief, Tiefe 8, 29, 83
 tile Ziegel 12, 27, 113ⁱ
 Tisph 18
 tithe 31, b
 to boot, to wife 146^{ac}
 Tochter 3, column 3
 Tod, todt 6, 8, 35
 token 27, note; 12, 37
 toll Zoll 146^{ac}, 147^{al}
 Tongue-sounds 4-10;
 Hissing-sounds
 change into, 11-13
 tooth 12, 32, Zahñ
 tow ziehen 12, 27, 37,
 117, Etymol. Tree
 trachten 156^{es}
 tragen 8, 25, 27 } Tree
 trail, train 25 } Etymol. Tree
 Trank, Trunk 142 } Etymol. Tree
 tränken 148^{ay}
 transgress 50, über
 Transitive meaning
 given by Insep. Vb.-
 Prefixes 43, 51
 translate, transplant
 51; 70, b
 trat trod, from treten
 trauen trust, &c. 119^b
 Trauerkleid 116
 traurig 8, 34, 94
 Traum dream 8, 34
 tray 21, 25, Etymol.
 Tree tragen
 treffen hit 176, line 1
 treiben drive 8, 31
 trespass 50, über
 treten tread 8
 treu, Treue 119, 83
 —, wahr 78, 83
 trieb 37, from treiben
 trinken, tränken, er-
 tränken 148^{ay}, Ety-
 mol. Tree tragen
 tritt 160, from treten
 Trommete trumpet 38
 trostlos 98, 119^b
 troth, trow, &c. 119^b
 trough, truck, 21, 25,
 Etymol. Tree tragen
 true, trust, &c. 119^b
 Trunk, Trant 142, 159^{rk}
 trunken, from trinken
 Tuch [tuck, tick] cloth
 füchtig 8, 24
 tug 156^{eg}, Etymol.
 Tree ziehen
 twenty 27, -zig
 twig, twin, twitter 12
 twinge, twitch 21
 two 12, zwei
 -ty 27, -zig
 tush, tusk 17
 Tyrann 10, 143^b, j; 175
 um, Noun-Pr. 77
 — bekannt “unbe-
 known” 116^b, 123^{ap},
 136^b
 Unbestand 77, 144^k
 unbewußt 78, 129^{ac}
 uncouth 31, b.
 underneath 69, nieder
 unendlich 79, 96
 -ung, Noun-Suf. 84
 Ungeheuer, ungemijcht,
 ungern, ungestalt,
 ungetreu 79
 Unglück 77
 union, unite 55, 147,
 verginnen
 uns us 32
 unsichtbar 79, 90, b
 —sterlich 144^m, 97
 Unstern dis-aster 77
 unter, Vb.-Pr. Insep. 52
 —, — Sep. 70
 — brechen 52
 — gehen 70, 157^{el}
 — halten 52
 — thänig 94
 Unthier 77
 unvergänglich 110
 uplift, upset 40 (c)
 uptake 114ⁿ
 us 32, uns
 utter 100, Suf. -er
- U
- U and V, 28
 U becomes O, 38
 über, Vb.-Pr. Insep. 50
 —, — Sep. 69
 — lassen, übersegen 51
 — treiben, übertreten
 50, 51, 69
 um, Vb.-Pr. Insep. 51
 —, — Sep. 70
 — armen 51
 — gehen 51, 70
 — stehen 51
 um — willen 152
 un, Adj.-Pr. 78
- V
- V and U, 28
 Vater 3, column 1
 Veilchen 82, 136, 137^j
 Vendredi 125^{pg}
 ver, Vb.-Pr. 52
 Verb-Prefixes 39-73;
 Sep. and Insep. 40;
 Sep. 58; represented
 by Suffixes 40-1
 Verb-root, without
 Suf., forms Masc.
 (or Neut.) Noun
 159^{rk}; with Suf. -e,
 Fem. Noun 126^{bi}

Verb-Suffixes 100-104; Engl.-ate,-en, -fy, -ize 41; -er, -le 100
 Verbs made Transitive and Figurative by Insep. Vb.-Prefixes 43, 50-2; have Weak and Strong roots 119^a, 138^a, 143^s; Causative 148^{ay}; Strengthened 156^{eg}
 verbergen 53, 111^{aa}
 —bieten, verbrennen, Verdeck, verderben, verdienen 53
 —einen, Verein 55, 147
 —fehlen 53
 —gänglich 97
 —geben 53-4
 —gehen 54
 —gnügen 55
 —heißen 54
 verify, verity, the very 43, 83, wahr
 verlassen 54
 —leihen 54
 —lieren, Verlust forlorn 54, 134^b
 —mögen 56, 130^{aj}
 —nehmen 56, 114ⁿ
 —schmachten 54
 —schwenden } 18, 54
 —schwinden } 18, 54
 —senden 54
 —sezzen 56
 —sprechen 54
 —streichen 54
 —suchen 171
 —trauen 56
 —wundern 56
 —zeihen 54
 vier, Viertel 37, 137ⁱ
 violet 82, 136^a
 visage 105, Gesicht
 vixen 81, 87, Füchsin
 Vogel fowl 27

Voice-sounds, *see*
 Vowels
 voll, Vb.-Pr. 56
 =völl, Adj.-Suf. 99
 —, =lös 98
 vom, im, &c. 116^d
 vor, Vb.-Pr. 70
 —bei gone by, past
 —mals 112^{an}, 175ⁱ
 Vorsehung 71, 85
 vorstellen, &c. 71
 Vowels explained 1, 2; changes of, 32-38; natural order of, 32; broad and narrow 33

W

W and B, 28, *Obs.*
 wach, wachen, erwachen, wachjam 21, 23, 48, 99
 wachsen 150
 Wachtel 24
 wackeln 102
 wade, waddle 102, wedeln
 Waffen weapon 30
 waffenkundig 93
 wag, waggle 102, wackeln
 Wagen 27
 wägen 27, 148^{ay}
 Wahn fancy 159, line 1; ich wähne I ween
 wahr, treu 78, 83
 wahrhaft 91
 Wahrheit 83
 wain 22, (*d*)
 wake, *see* wachen
 Wald wood 151
 Wall *vallum*, rampart; but Wand wall of a house
 wallen (168^b); 178, line 2
 Wallfahrt [walk-fare] pilgrimage

Wanderer 86
 Wanstead 8, Stadt
 Wandsworth 135ⁿ
 war was 14
 ward 111^y
 ward, warden 107^p, 155^{dx}
 warf 112, from werfen
 warp 30, 35, werfen
 warrant, guarantee, grant 49, gewähren
 warten 107, 155^{dx}
 warum 127
 wary, aware, beware, 43, 78, wahr
 was, Wasser 13
 was, were 14
 watch, *see* wachen
 Watling Street 154^{di}
 waver 100, Suf. -er
 wax 150, wachsen
 weak 23, 132, weich
 Weak and Strong roots 119^a, 138^a, 143^s
 weald 151, Wald
 wean 45, entwöhnen
 weave, weben, Weib 31
 Weber 86
 wedeln 102
 Weg, weg 27
 weg, Vb.-Pr. 71
 — gehen 71
 Weh woe 36
 wehen 65, 122^{ab}
 Weib wife 31; weibisch, weiblich 98, N.B.
 weich, weichen 132, 152^{cr}
 Weide withy 6
 weigh 27, 148^{ay}, wiegen
 Weilchen 82
 Weise wise, guise 164
 weit und breit 167
 Welch 19, 97
 welkin 35, Wolke
 wenden 148^{ay}
 wer who 36
 werden 135^a, 154^{di}

- werfen warp 30, 35
 Wetter 6
 which, *whilk* 19, 97
 whizz, whistle 102,
 jäuseln
 whole, wholesome, heil
 37, 99, 120^a
 wichtig 94
 wider, Vb.-Pr. 57
 — stehen, &c. 57
 wie — auch 149
 wieder, Vb.-Pr. 71
 — hallen 71, 138
 Wiederkehr 71, 155
 wiegen, Wiege 27
 wield 108^a
 wife 31, Weib
 will, from wollen
 willig 94
 willkommen 156
 winden, wenden 148^{ay}
 window 25, Auge
 wird, from werden
 wirf, from werfen
 wirklich 97, 130
 wise, wisdom 129^{ac}
 "wise saws" 26, Sage
 wissen 13, 129^{ac}
 — kennen 116^b
 Wissenschaft 88
 wist wußte 13
 wit, witch, Witena-
 gemot 129^{ac}
 with, withy 6, Weide
 with, in withdraw 71
 —, in withhold 56-7
 witness, wizard 129^{ac}
 Witling witling 81
 wo where 35
 Woge 126^{bi}
 woher, wohin 67
 wohl well 35
 wohnen, gewöhnen, ent-
 wöhnen 45, 49
 wold 151, Wald
 Wolke welkin 35
 wollen 144^h
 woman-cobbler 87
- wont 49, gewöhnen
 wood 151, Wald
 — en, woody 94, N.B.
 Word-building 39 -
 104
 worry 27, würgen
 Wort word 9
 worth, worthy 6, 94,
 135ⁿ
 wot weiß 13, 37
 wreak 23, rächen
 wright, wrought 22
 Wucht, Gewicht 24; 74,
 N.B.; 76
 wünschen wish 31, b
 wurde, würde, from
 werden
 Würde, würdig 6, 94,
 128, 135ⁿ
 würgen worry 27
 Wurm, Würmchen 38,
 82
 Wuth, Wütherich 85,
 144^{j,m}
- X
- X made up of K and
 S; put for Sk, Sc,
 Sch 16
- Y
- y, Adj.-Suf. 26, 92, -ig
 -y, Noun-Suf. 80, 83,
 -ei
 y- in yclept 26, ge-
 yard, garth 21, (b)
 yellow gelb 27, 30
 yonder jener 10, 36
 youth Jugend 5, 26, 32
- Z
- z a double sound 11;
 becomes T, 11; but
 see note
 -z, Vb.-Suf. 104
 zäh tough 25
 Zahl, zählen, zählen,
 12, 146^{ac}
- Zahl 12, 32
 Zehe, zehn, Zeichen,
 zeigen 27, note; 12,
 21, 23
 Zeichnung 84
 Zeit, Zeitung 139
 zer, Vb.-Pr. 57
 — brechlich 57, 97
 — reißen, &c. 57
 Zeus 127
 Ziegel 12, 27, 113ⁱ
 ziehen 12, 25, 27, 37,
 117; Etymol. Tree
 -zig -ty 27, note
 zog, Zögling Etymol.
 Tree ziehen
 zögern 102
 Zollverein 147^{a1}
 zu 141, 146^{ac}, 178^{ag}
 zu, Vb.-Pr. 72
 Zucht, züchtigen, Ety-
 mol. Tree ziehen
 zucken 12, 156^{eg}
 zufrieren 72, 166^a
 Zug, Zügel, Etymol.
 Tree ziehen
 zuhören 72
 zum 122, 146, 178^{ag}
 "Zunday" 11
 Zunge tongue 12, 38
 zur 162
 zurück Vb.-Pr. 72
 — bringen, &c. 73
 zurufen, Zuschauer, zu-
 tragen 72
 Zuyder Zee 11
 zwanzig 27
 zwei, zweifeln 12, 37,
 176
 Zweig 12
 zweite 159^{fl}
 zwicken twitch 12, 21
 Zwilling twin 12
 Zwing, Twing 160^h
 zwingen 12, 21, 43
 Zwinger 158^{fr}, 160
 zwischen 12, 18, 164
 zwölf twelve 12

Schedule of Works on Arithmetic.

BY SONNENSCHEIN & NESBITT.

The A B C of Arithmetic, Teacher's Copy, Part I., 1s.

" " Exercises only, " I., 4d.

" " Teacher's Copy, " II., 1s.

" " Exercises only, " II., 4d.

The Science and Art of Arithmetic—

Integral, Part I..... 2s. 6d.

Fractional and Approximate, Parts II. & III., 3s. 6d.

Parts I. II. & III. in One Volume 5s. 6d.

Published by WHITTAKER & Co., Paternoster Row.

A. SONNENSCHEIN'S APPARATUS, IMPROVED.

Consisting of CUBES, STAVES, PLATES, from Units to a Million.

Parts: Small Box, One to One Hundred, 5s.; Middle Box, 1,000, 4s.; Large Box, 10,000, 100,000, 1,000,000, 16s.; Complete Set, 25s.

Set as supplied to the School Board for London, 6s.

N.B.—For Vol. I. of the Arithmetic, only the Small Box and the Middle Box are required.

Number-Pictures, mounted for Class Teaching, 3s. 6d. the Set, inclusive of Model Lesson on the Number Six.

Maker: S. STANDRING, 8, Finsbury Street, London.

Also,

School Boards & Board Schools. By A. Sonnenschein. 1s.

WILLIAMS & NORGATE, Henrietta Street, Covent Garden.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS—continued.

working by rule of thumb, will entirely agree with the authors that progress is not mere advance from rule to rule. Any process once properly realized can never be quite forgotten, and to impart to students what our authors term 'a thorough and all but visual realization of each process,' should be the aim of every teacher. They can scarcely have a more efficient book to work with than that of Messrs. Sonnenschein and Nesbitt."—*Standard*.

"Some little time ago we drew attention to Part I. of Messrs. Sonnenschein and Nesbitt's Science and Art of Arithmetic. We have now Parts II. and III., dealing with vulgar fractions and approximate calculations, in which again we notice an independence of thought and originality of treatment which go far to shew how little the educational value of arithmetic has hitherto been understood."—*Standard*.

"If we mistake not, Messrs. Sonnenschein and Nesbitt's volume will altogether revolutionize the old methods of teaching what has hitherto been supposed a dry study. It is divided into three parts, viz., 'Integral, Vulgar Fractions, and Approximate Calculations.' New methods are given for very rapid, and in most cases, 'mental,' decimalization of money, weights and measures to any assigned degree of accuracy, and for the ready intro-conversion of the coins, weights, and measures of different nations. The volume must supersede the old-fashioned methods, and will be invaluable to young teachers, as well as learners, and will rapidly make its way as 'the' text-book of arithmetic."—*Naval and Military Gazette*.

"This is a work on Arithmetic of a peculiar, and in some respects an original character. Following in the steps of Professor De Morgan, the chief aim of the authors in explaining the *rationale* of the various arithmetical processes is not to give logical demonstrations of the several rules which a student is required to learn, but to carry him along some such path of reasoning as must have been travelled by an original discoverer; the present concise and conventional processes being unravelled, so to speak, and traced up to their first principles. . . . There is much to recommend in this view of teaching arithmetic; for, as the authors remark in the preface, no subject is so well fitted as this for the early training of the reasoning powers, 'principally because the student is enabled, without apparatus of any kind, steadily to test all his *a priori* conclusions by the light of experience.'"—*Educational Times*.

"This is the second part of a treatise on Arithmetic, the first of which has been already favourably noticed in these columns. The subject of Fractions is here taken up and treated with the fulness and completeness due to the important place it occupies as the Key-stone of Arithmetic. . . . In dealing with Decimals the authors have introduced the principle of 'Approximate Calculations,' by means of which much trouble is saved in working out results. . . . It is here that the great utility and simplicity of Decimals is seen, and the book before us does good service in giving prominence to this feature. . . . We are disposed altogether to entertain a high opinion of the merits of this work. The way in which it leads up to the various rules, by mental calculations and other preparatory steps, which serve to break the difficulty felt by the young learner, and its general adherence throughout to the best principles and methods of teaching, distinguish it as a work out of the common run on treatises of School Arithmetic."—*Educational Times*.

We have no hesitation in saying that the right note has been struck by the authors of the little book, a second edition of which lies before us. . . . We are sorry to conclude with an assurance that, take it as it is, the work of Messrs. Sonnenschein and Nesbitt is the best in the language on the subject of which it treats."—*Inquirer*.



London: WHITTAKER & Co., Ave Maria Lane.

430

R

SONSG

This book was taken from the Library on
the date last stamped. A fine of one
anna will be charged for each day the
book is kept overtime.

M.A. SECTION

16415

13884

ISLAMIA
COLLEGE
LIBRARY,
LAHORE.

Extract from the Rules:—

Books are issued for
fourteen days only.

A fine of one anna
per day will be charged
for each volume kept
over time.

Borrowers will be held
responsible for any
damage done to
books while in
possession.

